THE ADVENTURES OF
JOHN SMITH IN MALAYA
1600-1605

BY
A. HALE
The adventures of John Smith in Malaya.
The original of this book is in the Cornell University Library.

There are no known copyright restrictions in the United States on the use of the text.

http://www.archive.org/details/cu31924023257854
THE ADVENTURES OF
JOHN SMITH IN MALAYA
1600—1605
A yer sa'gantang sa'lubok,
Sa'dangkang yang ber-bunyi',
Siamang ber-jawat-jawat,
Tompat ungka ber-dayu-dayu;
Batin yang ampunya-nya.
CHAPTER I.

In the beginning of the year 1600, James Neccy, a merchant and adventurer, whose house was famous in the city of Haarlem in Holland, obtained a charter from the States General which empowered him to trade in the Eastern seas, and at the same time to further Dutch interests and influence so far as layd in his power in that region. His charter also hinted that it would be well for him to go armed, as besides enemies of the State, there were sea robbers in those waters.

In pursuance of his charter he laded two galleons and a crompster (kromsteven) with assorted merchandise, and set sail.

It was his intention to get as quickly as possible to the Malay Peninsula, stopping only at certain ports for the purpose of taking in water and fresh provisions. If fortune favoured him, he intended loitering about in the Straits of Malacca and perhaps doing a little damage to the Portugals' trade there, either as a merchant, by legitimate sharp trading, or, seeing that he was armed, perhaps there might be some chance of a fight at sea with some of their ships, or better still, a richly laden galleon bringing home cloves from Amboyna, or gold from Ophir.

His charter might, as he was privately told by the cunning old Burgomaster of Haarlem, be very liberally interpreted; indeed, as the Burgomaster had himself invested no inconsiderable sum in the venture he felt entitled to give advice, and did not hesitate to say that perhaps the most profitable
enterprise of all would be to gather pepper, and that the quickest harvest of that commodity would be found floating on the seas, under the Portuguese flag. This was not perhaps strictly moral advice, but the example set by England to the world in the West Indies, was fresh in men's minds; and Holland against Portugal in the East seemed an analogue of England against Spain in the West.

After leaving the vicinity of Malacca, James Neccy proposed paying a visit to Johor, whose King had evinced a friendly disposition towards Hollanders; thence it was his intention to sail up the East Coast and visit Patani, another city said to be favourable to the Dutch trade; and perhaps he would get as far as the important kingdom of Siam itself. The times were dangerous, and because of that, as well as the fact that those who went down to the sea in ships, remembered that they took their lives into their own hands, by reason of their slight knowledge of far away seas, their currents and winds, and other horrors with which the superstition of the times did not fail to describe them, it was customary for everybody on board, before they set sail, to make proper deposition of his property in the event of his death and the prognostications were so far favourable, that people expected one at least of the three ships that went away to return safely to port, and to come back deeply laden with gold; for were they not going to that Golden Chersonesus of the Ancients, whence King Solomon got his gold to ornament the Temple? Did not peacocks also abound, and monkeys, and the far-famed bezoar stones the medical properties of which were greatly exercising the minds of philosophers at that period? All these articles took up little space, so that one ship-load, if it got back safely, would be a very adequate return for the three ships, laden with the showy but inexpensive cargoes sent out.
Eggs were counted before they were hatched somewhat in this fashion. Three shiploads of cheap trade would sell for two cargoes of spices, and two cargoes of spices would go to purchase one of gold and precious ware; especially when it was hoped that the Portugals — not only rival traders, but State enemies — might be persuaded to contribute a fair share of the profits.

It is this venture, or rather the adventures of one member of the company, which will be detailed in the following chapters.

John Smith, whose adventures are here recorded, at the time he sailed with James Neccy, was twenty-seven years of age, having been born — somewhat irregularly — in the year 1573, at the village of Tregony in Cornwall, to which place his mother had secretly retreated, when she found it the better policy to do so.

His mother was an actress of some notoriety. Her name does not matter for the purpose of this story, nor does that of his father, who also was a person of some note, being in fact a clergyman, whose preaching had caused some considerable stir in the world of divinity, but who died at the early age of forty-five, two years after John Smith was born, having arranged that after his death a sum of five hundred pounds should be paid to a certain actress, named in his will, in token of his appreciation of her worth and good life.

It was a strange parentage and well calculated to produce an unorthodox child. Up to the time of the death of the mother, who was twenty-four years old when her son was born, and who lived for nearly fifty years after, it was not known that she had had a child before her marriage with a rich London merchant, when she was thirty years old. She had two other sons after her marriage, but she carried
the secret of her first-born to the grave with her, and even her husband, who died twenty years before her, had never learnt it.

But when she was buried in the church-yard of Saint Mary-le-Strand, followed to the grave by her two legitimate sons, both prosperous merchants of the city of London, there stood by the grave-side also a third gentleman, who wore a mourning knot of black ribbon on the guard of his sword, and who seemed — equally with her to sons — affected by the ceremony. Nobody knew the stranger, and when the brothers approached him when all was over and asked him why he wore mourning, he appointed to meet them at a later date, at a certain house near the village of Teddington; and there, a week later, he explained his relationship to them, producing such documentary evidence, in the shape of letters from his mother — who had always managed to keep in touch with her first child during his wanderings — that his half-brothers were convinced of the truth of his allegations, the more so perhaps when John Smith showed them his actual, authentic will, and desired them to take possession of and act on it, when they had proof of his death.

This will, if the schedule of the properties dealt with was true, greatly surprised the brothers, especially when John Smith explained that it did not deal with more than half of his property. The other moiety, he told them, he had already disposed of by gift, to certain connections of his own in the East, not however, mentioning what those connections were. Some very valuable items were mentioned in the will, amongst them being a tin mine in Cornwall, where was also an estate estimated to contain over one thousand acres, and besides these a very considerable sum of money was said to be deposited at a low rate of interest with a London
house of well-known fame for honest dealings. John Smith promised to travel to Cornwall and introduce his half-brothers to his agents and men of business there, as well as to the head of the house which held his moneys in London.

All this he did in due course, when the staid City merchants were considerably astonished at beholding the evidences of such great wealth. It appeared that the money deposited in London was all profits made on the tin mine in Cornwall, which was a very valuable business, worked somewhat differently from other mines in the vicinity. The Captain of the mine was a very bluff sailorlike old man, showing in his general bearing unbounded respect and affection for his master, who introduced his half-brothers to him as his heirs.

The estate John Smith explained, was of no very particular value at present, he had purchased it for sentimental reasons chiefly; and he pointed out to his half-brothers the cottage in which he was born, which was in the charge of a very old woman, who addressed him as her foster-son. He told them that all his life, whenever he returned to England from the East, he had always managed to meet his mother here. This explained to the brothers certain mysterious journeys of their mother, which they had noticed.

Their half-brother also told them that he had otherwise liberally provided for all his dependants in England; but he strongly advised them to keep the tin mine in work, with the same staff of men, and on the same system as at present. Moreover, the Captain of the mine, as well as his son, a darkskinned, strong-looking man about thirty years of age, when they understood the position, readily agreed to work for the two City men, as faithfully as they had done for their own master.

After spending three days in their company in Cornwall, John Smith took an affectionate farewell of his brothers,
whom he said he had often before seen, and of whom he had often spoken with his mother. He said that he was about to sail once more from the port of Bristol to the East, whence it was most probable he would never return; but he promised to communicate with them as often as opportunity offered, and especially to let them have certain knowledge of his death, whenever it occurred.

* * *

Three years afterwards, the brothers heard of his death, and took possession of their inheritance, which was richly augmented by a packet brought to them by a sea captain. This packet, which the captain said he knew was worth a king's ransom, was found to contain a bonanza, consisting of a very beautiful collection of emeralds, rubies and pearls, set in Eastern gold. It contained also a certificate of the death of John Smith, signed by the captains of two well-known merchantmen trading to the East, and sealed with the great seal of the Queen of Patani, under some Arabic writing, which, on translation, proved to be a panegyric, and a lamentation of the Great Queen of Patani on the death of her adopted son, John Smith.

The package also contained a last letter, written by John Smith to his halfbrothers, in which he said he was at that time aware of the fact that he was peaceably and quietly dying in the city of Patani. He had arranged for a certificate of his death to be delivered to them, and begged their acceptance, as a last souvenir, of the ornaments, which would be delivered to them, and which, he said, would give them some idea of the East. He sent them also an account of his life and travels, feeling sure that they would read with interest a true setting-forth of the wonders of the East, which, he said, had been to him a never-ending exposition of the wondrous GOD IN NATURE.
He declared that now, at the ending of his life, he was convinced that all creeds and systems of religion were narrow and the work of men. Some were more instinct with good than others, and nearly all of them were of use in leading the human race to conduct their lives in accordance with certain laws, which were necessary for the well-being of the human animal. He professed to find good in the Koran of the Arabians, equally with the Bible of the Christians. He commended to his half-brothers the precepts of Lao-tsze and Confucius, equally with the doctrines of Zoroaster and the Buddha; “but before all”, wrote he, “realize that the whole Universe is GOD; worship him not only as in Heaven, or as present when a congregation meets in a church, but consider rather that your own individual bodies and souls, equally with every particle of matter, animate or inanimate, every thought engendered in your brain, and every aspiration of every living thing, is GOD, and GOD is it; and then shall you find reason for worship, and the observance of moral and necessary laws and rules of life.”

With these words John Smith concluded his last letter to his half-brothers. It is, however, from the leaves of his journals and writings, enclosed in the packet sent to them, that the following chapters have been taken.

It has been thought inexpedient to reproduce the old-fashioned phraseology of the journals and essays, and also it had not seemed as if the tale could be so well told in the first person as in the original, for the same cogent reasons. It may also be said at once that the name John Smith, is not that which was signed at the bottom of the letter and mentioned in the certificate of death.
CHAPTER II.

The trading expedition, commanded, and in a great measure owned, by James Neccy, sailed from the port of Haarlem in the Low Country, in February of the year 1600. It consisted of the two galleons, named respectively JOHANIS DE HAKLUYT and JACOBUS DE HALLE, with the crompster called PETER ASMODEUS, and was under the supreme command of James Neccy as Admiral.

The English East India Company had just been started, with the avowed intention of spoiling the Portuguese trade in the East, which had indeed been now absorbed to a great extent by the Spaniards, in consequence of the amalgamation of the two states about twenty years previously.

James Neccy had been urged to combine with other Dutch merchants and form a company, to rival the English one, but had not been persuaded, although he foresaw that such a combination would be necessary, if a share of the trade was to be retained by the Hollanders; but at that time he considered himself strong enough to hold his own, and was astute enough also to perceive that if he had a successful voyage this time, he would be in a much better position, after the lapse of two or three years, to join any company which might have been formed; and in point of fact, the Dutch East India Company, when it was started in 1603, reserved a seat on the Directorate for him, and this he occupied on his return from the East.

The JOHANIS DE HAKLUYT carried the Admiral’s house
flag, bearing his warlike crest — for James Neccy came of good blood and an adventurous race. His crest was a mailed arm and hand holding a cross-bow elevated. His motto was an English one, for he was of Saxon-English descent. It seemed to refer to a trading spirit amongst his ancestors, although it might have had to do with the prowess of some leader in a fight, whose mailed fist was found to be heavy, for it consisted of the two words “Good weight.”

The JOHANIS carried a crew of one hundred men, under the immediate command of old Christian Lentholm, a Norwegian, who had all his life worked for the house of Neccy, gradually making his way upwards in the knowledge of seacraft, as well as in the confidence of the chiefs of the house, until he was considered not only the most expert sailing master in Holland, but almost the most travelled man of those parts. He was now making his third voyage to the East Indies. His crew, as well as the crews of the other ships, were carefully selected men, none under thirty years of age, and of many different nationalities. In the selection care was taken to procure those who had a good knowledge of the use of weapons of war, especially firearms; in fact a large majority of them had at one time or another served on ships of war, of the different European states.

The master gunner was a Frenchman, Lewes de Havre he was called. Twenty men of the crew of the JOHANIS were to be under his immediate command as gunners, if chance should require their services in a fight, and he was very eager to pick out the most likely men to work his guns, as soon as the crew was mustered before the start.

The other officer who shared the Admiral’s saloon in the poop, was John Smith, the chief super-cargo of the venture. John Smith had already made one voyage to the East with old Christian Lentholm, reaching as far as Java, and touching
at Pegu, Johor, and some ports in Sumatra and the islands. He had taken pains to acquire some knowledge of the Malayan language, the "lingua franca" of those seas, and of the trading customs of the natives. He had since his sixteenth year worked for the house of Neccy, where his mother had placed him; and as every man employed by that prosperous house, in whatever capacity, was paid according to the profits made, rather than a regular salary, he had already managed to get together a considerable sum, which he had loyally invested in the venture.

But besides this, his mother who had called him to England to see her before he started on this voyage, had put into his hands about a thousand pounds, telling him that it was his patrimony, and at the same time had explained to him the history of his birth. It appeared that his father, before he died, invested seven hundred pounds in his name, without stating the connection between them, and appointed his mother his guardian or trustee, with power to pay over the capital and profits to him at her own discretion, when she considered he would most require it.

This was a most delightful surprise to the young man, who unfolded to his mother a plan which he had been considering for some time, which was to leave the house of Neccy and travel about the East and trade on his own account. His affectionate mother, whilst deploring the long separation which this would entail, could not combat her son's resolution, which, considering his birth and up-rearing, was most evidently the best path in life for him.

With his mother's consent, he told his Master and Admiral what he wished to do. No objection was raised against his desire, on his agreeing not to leave the expedition, until the fleet had passed the end of the Malay Peninsula and sailed up the East coast. Then, he decided, he would leave the
ships at the most convenient port and start on his own particular venture, entrusting his share of the main enterprise to his Admiral.

John Smith was at this time a healthy young man, well educated in all the wiles of commercial dealings, but with a strain of romance in him, and also a great liking for philosophical studies. He had read much, especially the doctrines of ancient teachers of all countries, and was profoundly imbued with a spirit of moral analysis. He was, besides, an expert man-at-arms, very clever with the Spanish rapier and dagger, with which weapons he was almost invulnerable, having trained himself in combats against opponents armed with other and unusual weapons, such as javelins, halberts, clubs, axes and the like. He had also a fair knowledge of the simple chemistry and surgery of the times. Thus equipped, it seemed as if he had a very fair chance to hold his own in an adventurous life with a savage people, and this — as has already been shown — well proved to be the case. As to his work for the house of Neccy, the present trust reposed in him showed the estimation in which he was held.

He was represented in each of the other ships of the expedition by an assistant supercargo, and he also had an assistant on the JOHANIS, who, when he left the ship, was to take his place as chief supercargo.

The JACOBUS was as nearly as possible a counterpart of the JOHANIS. She was commanded by a Fleming.

The crompster PETER ASMODEUS was equipped with a crew of seventy men, under the command of Paul Keyut, a true Dutchman of the sturdiest type, who had commenced life under the auspices of Neccy as a Northsea pilot. The JACOBUS had twenty gunners and the PETER ASMODEUS fifteen, each company under the command of a master gunner. Lewes de Havre had been entrusted with the selection, not
only of the officers but of the gunners as well; and he arranged that each company, with its commander, should spend a month on the JOHANIS, under his own instruction; for it was well understood by all concerned that the time had come when artillery would play the most important part in any future sea-fight.

The PETER ASMODEUS indeed — which by reason of her lighter draught and superior sailing powers was destined to act as scout and tender to the heavier ships — carried amidships, elevated on a raised platform, a very unusual and expensive weapon, in the shape of long, bronze pivot gun, which would throw a ball, albeit of a small size, three times as far as an ordinary culverin. This gun had, after great persuasion on the part of Lewes de Havre, been only lately added to the armament of the house of Neccy and had been cast and carefully tested under the master gunner’s own eyes, at great cost and after many spoilt castings. It was composed of an amalgam, very carefully mixed after many consultations between John Smith and Lewes, the former of whom had made a study of this branch of science. The gun was with much ceremony christened “Anna”, after a youthful daughter of James Neccy, and amongst much fanciful ornamentation, the Neccy arms appeared on the breech of the gun, with a quaint legend just behind the touch-hole which might be freely translated into English as follows;

“Anna goes out to trade,
   Her heavy cost is paid,
   Her shot “Good weight” are made,
   Her foes shall all be laid”.

This unique gun was the especial charge of a young Englishman, named Rupert Saville, who had won the approval
of Lewes de Havre, as a good marksman and a reliable man.

The crompster was banked for six great sweeps, or oars, a side. Besides the pivot gun, she carried eight eighteen-pounder culverins and two five-pounder sakers, the demi-culverins, which these ships usually carried amidships, being discarded in favour of the pivot gun. The two galleons each carried sixteen culverins, sixteen demi-culverins, and eight sakers
CHAPTER III.

John Smith's writings do not contain very full accounts of the voyage down the west coast of Africa, the only incident of which appears to have been a little fight with a Portuguese carrack, which was ultimately driven into the mouth of the Zaire river, badly damaged; but which, before her collapse and escape to the protection of the fort, succeeded in so badly mauling the JOHANIS, that for some time it was seriously thought it would be necessary to abandon her, she having been hit several times below the water line. The lower holds filled so fast with water that the pumps could not keep it under, but ultimately the old Dutch boatswain, an expert diver, succeeded in partially stopping the leaks by caulking them from the outside with oakum, so that the shipwright and his carpenters could get at the damage from the inside. But it was evident to everybody that the repairs could only be considered as good enough to take them on for a week or two. The Admiral therefore decided that it would be necessary to seek the mouth of some other river with all speed, so that the ship could be properly careened and put into good fettle again.

The fight would have undoubtedly gone better for the Hollanders if the PETER ASMODEUS had not been sent away two days previously on a scouting and exploring expedition down the coast, with instructions to await the other ships at the mouth of the Quanza, a well-known place of call for
ships sailing south, and one where good water could be obtained.

The JOHANIS was thus badly damaged by the first discharge from the Portuguese carrack, a much larger ship and carrying many more guns. She had attacked the Dutch ships, evidently supposing them to be merchants of the usual type, which, whilst they were always armed, were not generally so well equipped as James Neccy had wisely decided his ships should be for this expedition. Without doubt the Portuguese captain thought to obtain an easy victory, especially as he was not far from the strongly fortified port at the mouth of the Zaire, whence he might hope for assistance in an emergency, and to which he could always make for refuge. He was, however, taught a severe lesson, as he barely escaped into harbour, and even then did not save his ship.

It was the better marksmanship of Lewes de Havre's gunners, and the excellent spirit of both crews under James Neccy's command, which assured to them the victory; and indeed the Admiral was vehemently urged by his ship's companies to allow the Portugals to be followed into harbour and finished off under the guns of the fort; but James Neccy said, "No! we are traders, not fighters. As this arrogant Portugal attacked me, I was obliged to fight; but now it behoves us to meet our consort with all speed, and find a convenient place where we may repair our damages."

This was so evidently the proper course to take, and it was also very apparent that more hard knocks than profit would be the result of following their enemy into port, under the guns of the fort, that it was at once adopted; so sail was trimmed, and the two vessels made off as well as they were able on the course taken by the PETER ASMODEUS two days before.

Except for the damage done to the JOHANIS, they had
suffered but very little loss, two men killed and ten more or less wounded on both ships. The Portugals had evidently suffered much more severely, for wen the JOHANIS and the JACOBUS had succeeded in getting into place on either side of the great carrack, the superior training of Lewes' gunners got a chance, and nearly every discharge told, so that the upper deck of the carrack was seen to be crowded with dead and wounded. Moreover, the master gunner had ventured on an experiment, which he had long wished to try in warfare; he had fired some red-hot balls into the Portugal; and as they escaped, the result was seen to have been effective, for she burst into flames before she got into harbour. But the experiment was not quite successful, for after a cold shot had been rammed home in the first gun, and the gunner was pushing down the red-hot shot on the top of it, the charge ignited before the shot was rammed home, bursting the gun and wounding three men severely, one of whom died within an hour.

It was John Smith who surmised that some gunpowder had been left in the tube of the gun, and had ignited when the red-hot shot was introduced, thus setting fire to the charge prematurely; and it was he who showed that this might be obviated, if the charge of powder was secured by double wadding and the tube carefully cleaned out with a damp mop, before the cold and then the hot shot were introduced. He volunteered to load the next gun himself, and Lewes de Havre, not to be outdone, offered to assist him. The operation was successfully carried out, and several red-hot shots were fired into the enemy, without further damage, except to the Portugals.

It was eight days before the PETER ASMODEUS was found anchored at the mouth of the Quanza river. Her Master had, on his first arrival, taken her some miles up the river and
found good water. He had also ascertained that there would be no difficulty about the larger vessels ascending as high, if not higher, than he had done. He had not seen any place fit to careen the JOHANIS so far as he had gone, but he had no doubt that such a place could be found if search was made for it. He had been obliged to return, because his men had been frightened by the strange and unearthly noises heard in the forest proceeding apparently from a group of small hills, about two miles from the riverbank. It seemed as if a party of giants were calling to one another, from hill-top to hill-top, although the roaring certainly might have proceeded from a troupe of lions, which were known to inhabit these parts, or perhaps from some other wild beasts which had not yet been heard of in Europe; for as in the time of the Roman Emperors, strange and unheard of things still came out of Africa.

Old Paul Keyut was of opinion that the noises were of human agency, although so far nothing in the shape of a human being had been seen; but when his crew understood that their commander held this opinion, they were only the more afraid and talked of giants, agreeing however, that as soon as the other ships arrived, they would willingly go and fight whatever was to be fought, were they giants or the very Sathanus himself, backed up with all his infernal hosts. This suited Master Paul very well, for he had made up his mind to do some trading with the natives, if they possessed anything worth having; and moreover he was obliged to move down the river again to meet his consorts, which, as has already been stated, he did.

It was quickly decided that all three vessels should move up the river with the tides, as far as possible, until a good place to careen had been found, and if circumstances seemed favourable, to overhaul all three ships, and in the meanwhile
to examine the country with a view to getting into touch with the natives, and trading with them if they had anything worth buying.

It took the little fleet four days to get far enough up the river, before a proper place to careen was discovered. They drifted up with the tide for the most part, for there was but little wind to assist them, and what there was, was to a very great extent, owing to the high forests and the eccentric turns of the river, not very favourable to them. But the delays were not wasted, as during the times they were riding at anchor, when the tide was flowing out, opportunity was taken to explore the country on either bank of the river. For the first three days they were passing through dense swampy forest, which was very difficult to penetrate, and except on the second day, when they passed the point where the Peter Asmodeus had stopped, no signs of humanity were met with. Here they heard the noises which had frightened their consort, but the Admiral would not allow them to go inland to investigate, wisely deciding that no delay must be risked until a careening place had been found, but promising that, when he had discovered how much damage had been sustained, he would allow a party to try and discover if there were any natives, and to endeavour to trade with them.

It took all hands more than a week to lighten the Johanis, by taking out her guns, top-masts, sails and other gear, before she could be dragged up onto a sandspit, which was covered by only a foot of water at low tide, but which was over six feet deep when the tide was in.

Advantage was taken of a full tide, and by the help of cables and blocks attached to the huge forest trees, she was hauled up as far as possible, and then shored up with props, which had been previously prepared from saplings cut in the forest.
This having been accomplished, everybody waited patiently for the out-going tide, in order that an examination of her hurts might be made. It was found that two strakes of her sheathing were so damaged and splintered that there seemed no alternative but to replace them by new ones also, the forecastle was very much knocked about, and a shot had pierced the fore-mast close to its foot, so that this timber also had to be replaced. In addition to this, general repairs were necessary all over the ship, as it was evident that she would not stand any very great strain of wind or sea.

When these serious damages were realised, considerable consternation was expressed, as it was quickly understood that some time must elapse before timbers could be obtained which were sufficiently well seasoned to use for the repairs necessary.

A general meeting of all the crews was called; for James Neccy, recognising, as he always did, that all were shareholders in the enterprise, considered that each individual should have a chance of expressing his opinion. There seemed to be four alternatives. First, for the two ships to proceed with the voyage, dividing the crew of the JOHANIS between them, and sacrificing the least valuable part of the cargo of the three ships to make room for the excess and the extra men, and leaving the JOHANIS to her fate. Secondly, to patch up the JOHANIS sufficiently to take her back to Holland for repairs. Thirdly, to leave her crew where she lay, and for her crew to repair her properly there; the other two ships meanwhile to continue their voyage, and the JOHANIS to follow them, or return home, at their discretion when she was in good order. Or fourthly, for all the fleet to remain in the river until she was in order again, and then to proceed all together with the voyage. The last of these alternatives was adopted, with a very few dissentient
votes, and was approved of by the Admiral; for even if six months had to be spent in this river, there seemed no especial reason to regret it, as food, in the shape of fish and fowl at any rate, was abundant, good water was handy, and moreover the spirit of adventure was strong amongst the crews, who were anxious to explore the country and get into touch with the natives, anticipating strange discoveries and, perhaps, profitable trade.

John Smith was especially delighted with this decision, for he had read of enormous river-horses and wingless birds, giants and pigmies, anthropophagi, and wild, hairy men who lived in trees; he therefore hoped for much profitable exploration and a great fund of information to be acquired, to say nothing of a chance to verify or refute what he had read in books.

He was convinced that the noises heard down the river were due to human agency, and that somewhere in the forest near at hand there were not a few natives, because as he was exploring the country with Lewes de Havre, about a mile inland from the right bank of the river, in the direction of the hills from which the noises proceeded, they had discovered what was evidently the remains of a large camping place in an open space. Here they had counted over a dozen heaps of ashes and charred brands, and had noticed some very large bones lying about, which they thought must have originally belonged to elephants; but it was evident that the camp had been deserted for some weeks, as already the coarse grass was springing up through the ashes a foot high. What was also very significant was the discovery of two human skulls. They told nobody except the Admiral of their discovery, and for fear of alarming the men, it was agreed to keep the matter secret; but James Neccy gave strict orders that no party of less than twenty men was to
go into the forest out of sight of the ships, and that no straggling was to be allowed, alleging as a reason the danger from wild animals.

The JOHANIS having been hauled up as high as she could be got, and strongly shored up, it was found possible for the shipwrights to work on her damaged side, and nothing was now wanted but timber properly seasoned. But first all hands were set to work to build a stockade and clear a space round it, for the better protection of the ships and also for a store-house for the material taken out of the JOHANIS. It took nearly all the available force of the three crews about a month to finish this to the satisfaction of the Admiral; but when it was completed the position was clearly a very strong one.

About one hundred acres were cleared round the fort and opposite the ships, which were moored as close to the shore as they could ride at anchor without touching bottom at low tide, the Peter Asmodeus lying about two hundred yards up stream from the sand-spit on which the JOHANIS was moored, and the Jacobus about the same distance down stream. The fort was about one hundred yards inland from the JOHANIS, on a rising bank. The Peter Asmodeus and the Jacobus were further protected in the river by booms constructed of very light timber about a foot in diameter, joined together by iron links and staples, and armed with rows of iron spikes. These booms would be very difficult for naked savages to surmount, nor could canoes get by them, because, being very buoyant, they rolled easily in the water, and as they rolled still presented a fresh row of sharp spikes to any one trying to climb over them. The fort was more properly speaking a stockade. It was constructed of strong palisadoes set in the ground and forming a square twenty yards each way, the fence standing twelve feet out
of the ground and being provided with a banquette all round the inside four feet high, on which were mounted the guns taken out of the JOHANIS. A garrison of twenty men under Lewes de Havre was to occupy this structure. For their accommodation and for the protection of the stores taken out of the JOHANIS, a warehouse roofed with palm leaves was built in the centre. Good water was supplied by a small stream running down the sloping ground close to the fort, and it was also found that water was easily obtainable by digging wells six feet deep near the edge of the river, and one was dug in the stockade itself.

During the time these preparations were being made, indeed as soon as it was discovered that good timber would be required for the repairs of the JOHANIS, a party, consisting of the chief shipwright and his assistant carpenters, with ten armed men as escort, had been organised under the command of John Smith, to search the forest for three or four miles inland for good and suitable trees, out of which the timber required could be cut. Every day different samples of timber were brought in by this party, planks and baulks of suitable size being split out of the trees and adzed into suitable shape. These planks and baulks were carefully laid out where they would dry in the sun, so that they should be well seasoned; and the sorts which after careful examination proved to be the best for the purpose, were chosen for the work of repair. It was considered that no timber would be suitable until it had been drying for at least three months, either for the strakes required or for the masts.

This party had very soon discovered signs of humanity in the forest, they found recently-used camping places, and after the first fortnight they had caught glimpses of black savages flitting about amongst the trees, evidently watching the working party. As days went on, these shy watchers
became more numerous and less afraid of the new arrivals in their forest though John Smith’s workmen, as the savages became more daring, got to be somewhat nervous, and it was only by placing his men in a cordon round the carpenters when they were engaged on a special tree, and carefully guarding them on their journeys to and from the ships, that they could be persuaded to continue the necessary work, for bows and arrows had been seen in the hands of the savages, and the woodcutters, having heard of poisoned darts, did not relish working with their backs to an unknown danger.

They did all they could, inviting and beckoning the savages in the most enticing way to come forward, but without avail, for the most they could ever see of them was a black head on a black torso, or perhaps a naked arm and hand grasping a bow elevated on high as the savage owner made his way through the dense undergrowth of the forest in retreat, when they advanced in his direction.

At last, acting on the advice of James Neccy, they used to make a practice of leaving small articles, such as strips of brightcoloured cloth, glass beads or buttons, on the stump of any tree which had been felled during the day. Invariably these articles disappeared by the next morning, but no other notice was taken of the presents. As yet, by the Admiral’s orders, no gun had been fired, as he considered it unadvisable to frighten the savages by any display of that sort, although it probably would be no new thing to them, as the Portugals, who had been for some time established on the coast, had certainly used firearms, and had probably even killed some of the natives, for they were wellknown to be cruel and unscrupulous in their dealings with them.

There had been no dearth of fresh food, for the rivers abounded in fine fish of many sorts, while some forest fruits had been carefully and gradually tasted and had been found
excellent eating. A palmnut especially, about the size of a small walnut with a very hard shell, was found to be full of oil and most useful in cooking.

During the night time the forest was alive with noises of wild beasts, but nothing was ever seen in the day, except crocodiles in the river and a few monkeys and birds in the high trees.
CHAPTER IV.

It was many weeks before John Smith was able to persuade the natives to come near him. It was considered better to let them have as much time as they wanted to make up their minds, and to show as little anxiety for intercourse with them as possible. This policy bore excellent fruit. The first intimation of a desire to come to closer relations on the part of the savages was the finding one morning of a large basket full of manioc root, placed on the tree stump where the evening before a string of bright-coloured beads had been left. The manioc was known to several of the men, ast they had eaten it before on the African coast, and they considered it a most excellent article of food. After this something was found on the tree stumps every morning, in exchange for the valueless but showy articles placed there.

John Smith hit on a plan to make this system of barter more useful, one evening he left an unusually large quantity of articles on the tree stump where his party had been working, and the next morning he found in exchange a much larger supply of fruit and vegetables. On that evening he left nothing, and the following morning nothing was left by the savages. It was thus proved that a trading spirit was rife amongst them, and after a few days he was able to improve on the system. He was certain that the working party was closely watched by the savages, who were now often seen flitting about amongst the trees and, from the fort, even on the edge of the large clearing.
One evening, after work was finished, he mounted the stump of the last tree cut down, and turning to the four points of the compass, by gesticulation and shouting invited the attention of any savages who might be in the vicinity. He then held up in his hands a dead fowl, which he had brought from the ship for the purpose, and pretending he was very hungry, he went through a pantomime of plucking, cooking and eating the chicken in a great hurry; but suddenly he cut it short, as if he remembered his mates who were also hungry on board the ships; so he called his men around him and they all at his suggestion made a great hubbub, at which John Smith showed them the fowl. They then shouted for joy, as if at the sight of food greatly longed for. After this he ostentatiously displayed a woodman's axe and a small hatchet, which he flourished over his head and then stuck into the tree stump and left them there; the whole party thereafter marching home to the stockade, with the fowl borne before them in triumph on a pole.

Although during the whole of this little theatrical display not a single savage was seen to be on the watch, it was quite evident the next morning that it had not only been observed, but also well understood, as it had been intended, namely, to intimate that the white men would be glad of a change of diet, and could eat animal as well as vegetable food; for on their arrival to start work, their larder was found to be well supplied, two large hogs of a most uncouth appearance, a fine ape and about a dozen birds, chiefly pigeons, being found deposited by the tree stump, — a very adequate return for the axe and hatchet.

After this, animal food was always abundantly provided, but at some of the strange beasts the men took exception. At first some were squeamish about eating monkey, but soon it was found to be most excellent. Nobody could, however,
be persuaded to eat the snakes and large lizard-like animals which were displayed sometimes as if they were more desirable than other animals. But absolute fright was the result of finding one morning the enormous head of what was recognised by John Smith as a river-horse or hippopotamus, set up on a tree stump with the mouth propped wide open and a human child's head, evidently freshly severed from the body, placed inside the enormous jaws.

The child's head they left on the tree stump, but that of the hippopotamus was carried back to the fort. The teeth were very large, and this was considered to be the first legitimate trading transaction with the people. They hoped, however, that now they would be able to induce them to bring in elephants' tusks.

The next evening, having had the teeth knocked out of the hippo's skull, John Smith exposed them from the top of a tree stump, and also a large drawing of an elephant with enormous tusks which he had prepared, and which he left behind with another axe and hatchet, but the next morning matters were forwarded in an unexpected way; for on arriving at the place, the axe, hatchet and drawing were still where they were left, and at first sight they thought the place had not been visited, but on searching the ground in the neighbourhood, at a distance of about twenty yards from the tree, the party was struck with astonishment at seeing two little black children, as they appeared to be, standing securely bound to stakes with cords made of twisted woody creepers. As soon as the sailors had gathered round these two strangelooking creatures and had discovered that they were actually a full-grown man and woman, although less than four feet in height, they heard a discordant shout from the edge of the clearing, and saw a naked savage gesticulating, and flourishing on high something which one
of the sailors recognised as a flask, which he had left behind the day before, nearly full of schnapps. The savage seeing that he had drawn their attention to himself, proceeded to explain his wants after John Smith's own style; first he pretended to take a drink from the flask, then he grinned and rubbed his abdomen, and in this way expressed great satisfaction. He then took another drink, after which he fell to dancing and shouting; a third, and his actions portrayed an advanced stage of drunkenness by grotesque antics and staggering; a fourth, and he incontinently tumbled over and apparently slept the heavy sleep of drunken unconsciousness. But his unconscious fit did not last long; he had more playacting to do, and shewed himself an adept pupil of the white man; for after a few minutes he jumped up, rubbed his evidently sore head for a little while and then went on with his mummery. He pointed to the flask, then to the two poor creatures tied to the stakes, and turning to the stakes, and turning to the forest he shouted out what was apparently an order to somebody, for after a short interval another tall savage appeared, leading six little men and women similar to the two tied to the stakes. These were arranged in a line facing the white men. They were tied together by a long rope, with a loop round each neck. The playactor then went on to explain his desire: he elevated the flask, brought it down to opposite his breast, and then started off as is to take it to the forest, his companion in the meantime, detaching the first little man from the string, advanced a few paces and tied him up to a tree. Then the first savage returned from the forest, and exposing the flask as before, took it back to the forest, and his companion brought forward another slave. This pantomime was repeated, until all six of the dwarfs had been brought forward and tied to the stakes. Then the two tall savages untied them
all again, readjusted them to the long rope, and with them disappeared into the forest. There was no mistaking what was meant by this elaborate little comedy; the natives were indifferent to any form of trading, except that which would give them the especially good drink which they had acquired by accident; and this they were willing to buy at the rate of a slave for a flask. Slaves acquired at this rate would be cheap enough certainly, but it did not seem a very moral sort of trade to John Smith's sensitive conscience. The rest of the party had no compunction about it, and urged that six flasks of schnapps should be at once procured and deposited; but there were many matters to be considered, and it was decided not to do anything until the Admiral and the other chiefs of the expedition had been consulted.

The two dwarfs were therefore first secured by a rope round each of their necks, the ends of which were held by two sailors, and were then released from the stakes to which they had been tied. They were dreadfully frightened, and taking into consideration the incident of the child's head exposed in the jaws of the hippopotamus a few days before, John Smith thought perhaps they imagined they were going to be eaten by the white men, for he had heard that there were cannibals in Africa. He therefore did all he could to reassure them, by keeping all his company, except the two sailors who held them, at a distance, and by offering them water to drink and fruit and roasted manioc to eat, first drinking and eating of it himself, and by applying a soothing salve to their sores caused by the ropes which had bound them. He stroked and patted their naked backs, and ultimately succeeded in persuading them to eat and drink and stand on their feet, and at last to walk with him to the fort, where their arrival caused much amusement.

They were very ugly indeed, although as they were quite
naked it was apparent that they were very young, in fact in the hey-day of their youth and beauty, but it was a different sort of beauty to what the white men had been accustomed, consisting chiefly of dwarfish stature, dirty, dark, tan-coloured skins, very big abdomens, monkey faces and heads of hair like mops; moreover, their bodies were greatly disfigured by scars and some wounds which were not yet healed, evidently signs that, young as they were, their lives had been passed in a severe struggle, perhaps against the natural enemies of mankind in the forest, perhaps against their own kind; in fact they did not seem very friendly the one with the other, as they walked out of the forest to the fort, hardly speaking to one another and when they did speak, if talking it was, frowning and snarling much like angry dogs. For the rest, they were naked and not ashamed, proving that it was their natural state, as indeed seemed to be the case with their masters, so far as could be judged by the two men who had shewn themselves that day.

The other savages seemed to be fine, tall men, quite naked also, and of the same dark, tan colour. They wore necklaces and girdles of what looked like teeth and claws of some wild animals, and their heads also appeared to be very elaborately ornamented, the hair being made to stand up in bunches or crests, moreover they were wearing some of the articles deposited by the traders, such as beads and buttons, and had strips of bright-coloured stuffs a yard long flying from their girdles like tails.

The two captive dwarfs were critically examined by the Admiral and his officers, who treated them kindly, offering them various things to eat and drink and shewing them their arms and clothes, but they were very much like animals and very suspicious, smelling each article of food before tasting it, and in their anxiety and suspicion of everything
offered to them, apparently becoming a little more friendly with each other, for they began to talk more, and ultimately seemed to come to a mutual understanding as to their course of action with regard to eating and drinking the strange things offered to them.

The man first carefully smelled every article of food offered to them and then passed it over to the woman, who ate a little of it, apparently in great fear. After an interval, as she experienced no ill effects, the man ate also. It was thus seen that they were much afraid of poisons, and that they were not in the habit of trusting their fellow-men at all; and the subservience of the female to the male was also most evident, for the woman was made poison-tester to her more powerful mate.

This kindness on the part of the Admiral and his officers seemed likely to have serious results to the savages, for after they had assured themselves that the food was not poisoned, there appeared to be no limit to their appetites, a stiff porridge of barley meal, seasoned with small bits of salted pork especially finding favour with them. A wooden bowl containing about a quart was first given to them: the woman ate a little first, and after a due interval the man took the bowl from her and finished it, scooping it out with his hand and filling his mouth, at first slowly, but afterwards as fast he could, with the evident intention of leaving none for his mate. She was therefore supplied with a second bowl, but before she had half finished it, the man snatched it from her and ate it all up. The large porringer in which it was cooked was therefore ordered in, and the wooden bowls kept supplied as fast as they were emptied, until, as John Smith expressed it, in rather more forcible language than is quite advisable to use here, their abdomens were distended in a very remarkable manner, but obviously to their own
great satisfaction and contentment. When this end had been attained it seemed well to stop the supply of food, but the Admiral with his own hands gave first the woman and then the man a very small modicum of schnapps, remarking that “the feast certainly required a doctor to assist its digestion.”

The production of the flask of schnapps, similar to the one which had been acquired by the master savages the day before, gave unbounded delight to the dwarfs, who had apparently seen the effects produced on their masters by the drinking of its contents. They grinned and chattered and strained on their neck halters towards the Admiral until he gave them each their jorum. They sipped the spirit and held it in their mouths so as to enjoy it longer, rubbing their bellies and rolling their eyes in a very grotesque manner, waiting for the spirit to have the same effect on them as it had on their masters. But they were, to their great disappointment, only allowed a very small dose each, and were then led away to a corner of the chamber where the council was sitting, and there tied to a post in such a way that they could move a little, or lie down at their ease to recover from their large meal. Their guards were then dismissed, John Smith promising to watch them and frustrate any attempt on their part to escape or do damage.

They seemed, however, to be very well contented with their position. The man lay down flat on his back, and the woman fell to rubbing his belly, which was very much distended and apparently somewhat painful. In this way they appeared to become somewhat more friendly with one another, until, as John Smith writes, he thought it better to procure an old sail and hang it across the corner of the room, so that they might sleep in greater comfort and privacy, for one of them was a woman, and from the way in which the man dominated her, he believed that she was
his wife, or at least likely to be, and their love-making would progress more satisfactorily in secret.

Having thus properly disposed of the captives, the Admiral and his officers proceeded to discuss the affairs of the expedition. A large quantity of timber of different sorts had been collected, roughly hewn to meet the requirements of the shipwrights, and arranged in the best manner possible for drying and seasoning; but it was evident that at least another two months must elapse before the material would be fit for use, and up to the present the only articles of trade procured were some hippopotamus teeth and two slaves.

The slaves, both John Smith and old Christian Lentholm assured the Admiral, would command a very high price amongst the Malay kings in the Far East, or could be judiciously used as gifts to them, in order to secure favourable countenance; and all the officers agreed that it would be well to procure a few more of them, if it could be done at such a cheap rate as a flask of schnapps for each slave. Also, they might even be made of some use, if they were trained to service, and could perhaps be utilised to fill up gaps in the muster roll of the expedition, for men would certainly die and become disabled before it was over, a contingency which no one ever lost sight of.

But this was not the sort of commerce which the expedition had set out to engage in, and all the chief members of the council agreed that the time had now arrived to get into touch with the bigger race of savages who inhabited this region, and to start a trade of some description with them. They were evidently most willing to exchange slaves for flasks of schnapps, but only a few slaves could be accommodated, and not many flasks of spirits might be spared. It was true, as John Smith pointed out, a still could easily be set up and some sort of spirit distilled from any grain
that might be found, or even from the manioc roots, which would probably please the savages as well as the schnapps made in Holland; for it seemed evident that the enjoyment to be got out of it by the savages was that of the drunkard rather than of the connoisseur.

In furtherance of this, a clay furnace was at once built and a large ship’s copper set in it. A wooden dome was made to fit it, and a worm with a water jacket was fixed into the top. The last, about which some difficulty was at first experienced, was ultimately supplied by nature, in the form of two stalks of bamboo, one about six inches in diameter for the water jacket, and another about two inches for the worm, the divisions at the joints being carefully cleaned out by the use of long-handed gouges, until two perfect tubes were made, the larger twelve feet and the smaller fourteen feet long. The smaller tube was then fitted into the centre of the larger one by caps, so that a foot of its length projected at either end. One end was next fitted with a wooden bend, so that it could be tightly fixed into the top of the dome, while the other was slightly depressed so that the condensed steam could run down the tube and escape as distilled spirit. The water jacket was supplied by a man continually pouring cold water into a hole at the top of the higher end, and letting it escape through a cavity at the bottom of the lower. When ultimately a supply of manioc was obtained, this apparatus answered the purpose excellently. It is true the spirit obtained did not taste good enough to induce the sailors to drink it: it was really very nasty, but it was much appreciated by the natives, whose palates did not require consideration, so long as they could get drunk on it. But the story of the spirit and its uses will be told hereafter. We left the chiefs of the expedition consulting as to the next move to take
towards trading for some useful commodity with the savages.

It was decided that the best policy would be to ignore them for a time, as it was evident that they wanted the wares which the traders possessed, and that probably if they were left alone for a little while their desire for these wares, especially the spirit schnapps, would make them more venturesome. In the meantime the two dwarfs were to be treated very kindly and to be kept well fed, and after a day or two to be shewn the power for doing damage which the white men possessed in firearms; for up to the present, by the Admiral's orders, not a shot had been fired, for fear of frightening away the savages, who without doubt were hiding in the vicinity and slyly watching everything which took place.

By this time also many of the men suffered considerably from calenture and a dangerous bloody flux, which weakened them very much, especially those who had been wounded in the fight with the Portuguese carrack. It was thought that if the PETER ASMODEUS was sent down the river with the sick men, to lie off the mouth for a few days, the sea breezes would assist their recovery; and it was also desirable to see if there were any ships near the mouth of the river, as their late adversary might have arranged for them to be pursued, and it was not advisable to be caught napping. Furthermore, if the savages saw the ship go away, they might become afraid that their visitors were leaving, and they would get no more of the fine drink which they craved; this desire and the risk of its non-fulfilment might perhaps tempt them to come forward. The sick men were therefore moved to the PETER ASMODEUS, and she was unmoored and sent down the river.

The greater part of the ships' companies were set to work to strengthen the stockade, which as well as the
Johanis was further defended by rings of caltrops made of split bamboo, sharpened and hardened in the fire, after a fashion which Christian Lentholm had seen practised by the Malays in Johor. The shipwrights meanwhile attended to the drying of the timber, paying particular attention to those sorts which were the least damaged by insects, "white emmets", according tho John Smith's notes, being especially destructive, timbers of the palisades and buildings often requiring to be renewed.

Our hero seems to have made a sort of herbarium and so have kept leaves, flowers and fruits of each description of timber and to have referred to them by numbers, recording some very interesting facts about the different species. As might have been expected, the "white emmet" comes in for much abuse and appears to have been a thorn in the side of everybody concerned, and some timbers by reason of the damage done by these pests were immediately rejected, so that at last only about five species were left, and a working party was sent out to get a further supply of these.

Lewes de Havre took the opportunity of this time of inaction to overhaul his artillery, to exercise his men in handling their weapons, and to dry some gunpowder which had got damaged by the water during the fight. John Smith also set his men to arrange the trade cargo, putting up special articles in separate packages, for convenience of barter or for presents to chiefs.

He also took great pains to exercise picked men in the use of the Spanish rapier, arguing that, at close quarters, a few men wearing light defensive armour would do great damage and strike terror to the hearts of naked savages, by reason of the unusual mode of attack and the ease with which a good fencer evaded even longer weapons than his own.
Then one morning Lewes and John Smith, armed with matchlocks of heavy calibre, and accompanied by the pair of dwarfs, each guarded by a sailor, who led them by strong cords fastened to rings round their necks, went up the river bank, with the intention of showing the dwarfs the white man's power in offensive weapons. The savages had by this time become in some degree tame, though they had never been actually violent, seeming to accept their position as inevitable and as a natural consequence of life, probably being used to slavery and subjection to a superior race; but they were still very suspicious, always tasting their food carefully and waiting for the effects of possible poison before eventually eating it. John Smith, noticing this, won considerable influence over them by himself placing their food before them every day, and eating a little from each bowl, in order to show them that it was harmless; and by as often as he was able staying with them and letting them examine his clothes and weapons. He got the woman to wear a short sailor's petticoat, and the man to don a pair of thin breeches, to hide their nakedness. They were proud of these garments, although they evidently did not consider them essential from the same point of view as their master. The woman indeed, who had the habit of showing her affection after the manner of some apes and other animals, was very immodest, in spite of sundry slaps administered to her by her master for her naughtiness; but she apparently looked on her punishment in the light of a caress, and it was long before she could be broken of the habit. Both the man and the woman seemed more like half-domesticated animals than human beings, but as was shortly to be proved, the instincts of savagery were combined with a considerable modicum of intelligence, which was also inherent in them.
The party went upstream along the river bank until they came to the edge of the clearing, where they were not ill-pleased to see a few savages watching their advance. These, however, quickly disappeared in the forest. At this point a small stream joined the river. When the tide was out this stream dwindled down to a mere trickle of water over a wide expanse of sand, which was a favourite place for crocodiles to bask in the sun. Several of these beasts had been caught on baited hooks by the sailors, and John Smith had commenced to tan their skins with a liquor made from the bark of a tree, which seemed to be sufficiently astringent.

They were lucky enough to find three large crocodiles lying out in the sun fast asleep, with their mouths wide open. The two slaves were brought forward and shewn the crocodiles, at which they naturally did not evince much surprise, crocodiles being only common objects to them. John Smith then proceeded to explain to them by pantomime that he would kill them by means of the weapons which Lewes and he carried. The savages appeared to understand what he meant, for the man picked up two sticks, which he arranged in his hands like a bow with the arrow drawn back to the string; then letting the arrow go, he immediately fell down as if dead; but pointing to the gun he expressed his disbelief in its killing powers very emphatically, showing by his actions that the crocodiles would all run away to the river long before the hunters could get up close to them, thus proving that he knew nothing of the power of the weapon to do damage from a distance. John Smith however assured him that it would, and he and Lewes prepared their matchlocks, agreeing both of them to aim at one particularly large beast, in order to make sure of killing their quarry. They fired both together at a word of command
given by one of the sailors, and were gratified to see the great saurian roll over and die almost immediately, while the other two scampered down to the river.

But what they were not prepared for was a chorus of yells and a rush, as of hundreds of people tearing through the forest, proving that they were being watched by large numbers of the savages, and that it behoved them to be very careful how they exposed themselves, or went into the forest except in sufficiently large parties.

The effect on the captive dwarfs was also very extraordinary and somewhat amusing. At first they made a rush for the forest, and if they had not been securely held by the sailors would certainly have escaped. As it was, they soon realised that they only hurt their necks by straining against the collars which they wore, so they endeavoured to reach John Smith, but the sailors held them back, and perhaps rather rougly; at any rate the man dwarf at last turned on the sailor who held him and stuck a small thorn into the back of his hand, after which they both got quieter, and when John Smith went up to them they grovelled at his feet, embracing his legs and uttering piteous moans.

Nothing more was thought of the thorn at the time, the man merely pulling it out, and in fact not realising that the dwarf had intentionally stuck it into his hand, thinking that perhaps it had been picked up whilst struggling in the bushes. Some more men were called from the stockade, and the crocodile was skinned and cut up, the bullets being carefully extracted and shewn to the dwarfs, and the matchlocks reloaded in their presence, while at the same time it was explained to them that the bullets out of the guns had killed the crocodiles. This they easily understood, although it seemed that they thought the guns were endowed with life and killed of their own volition. In the meantime the
sailor who had been pricked with the thorn began to feel shooting pains in his hand and all up his arm. He called John Smith's attention to it, and even as he was speaking the pain became so violent, his hand and arm swelling so rapidly and turning black, that another sailor had to take charge of the dwarf, who all the time stood by grinning with satisfaction. The man explained the apparent cause of it, mentioning that he now believed the dwarf had intentionally stuck the thorn into his hand.

However it was done, it seemed certain that the hand was badly poisoned and unless prompt and energetic measures were taken to stop the spread of the venom through the system, the man might die. John Smith therefore first bound a ligature tightly round his arm, as high above his elbow as possible, and then opened two or three veins in his arm, scratching the skin pretty deeply wherever it had turned black. The man was then carefully led back to the fort, with his wounded arm hanging down so that his blood could easily escape, and was there fomented with hot water, his arm being poulticed with some "soveraigne herbes", of which John Smith had a considerable stock; he was also liberally dosed with schnapps, in order to keep him from fainting.

It seemed advisable to the Admiral to determine if the dwarf was responsible for this, because if he was, extra precautions would have to be taken in guarding not only the slaves they already had, but any others afterwards acquired. The dwarfs were therefore brought into the room where the poor sailor was lying, apparently nearly moribund, on a bed place, and they endeavoured to elicit from them how the accident occurred. There was no difficulty about doing that, for the male dwarf immediately betrayed himself by his evident delight at seeing the poor man in the state
he was. The black imp fell to capering and grinning, pointing to the sailor and intimating by his actions that he would soon be dead, and then to the disgust and horror of his audience, he commenced to smack his lips and rub his belly, with the evident desire to intimate that he would make a good meal.

This conduct so incensed the Admiral that he ordered him to be taken out and hung to the branch of a tree at once, as a warning to the other savages. But John Smith begged him off, not certainly from a merciful desire to save him from punishment, but he argued that if the savage could do so much damage by merely sticking a thorn into his enemy, it behoved them all to first investigate the matter with a view to their own protection in the future. As he said, it was well to find out if the critical state of the poor sailor was due to poison or witch-craft, and if they killed the person who inflicted the injury, they might never find out how he did it. The Admiral agreed with this view of the case and also suggested that the author of it should conduct the investigation.
CHAPTER V.

The poor sailor had all this time been suffering great torture of burning pains all up his arm, but not beyond the ligature which had been applied; nor did he lose consciousness. He urged that they should cut his arm off at once, for he said that he was sure that it would never be of any more use to him, and he was strongly of the opinion that, not only by way of punishment for what he had already done, but in order to stop him doing any more harm, the dwarf should be burnt alive like any other wizard. But John Smith inclined more to the opinion that the mischief was caused by poison, and because of the present conduct and antics of the slave, he believed that he had used the thorn intentionally. The question which puzzled him however, was, how the thorn had chanced to be so handy and ready for use. If it grew on any plant in the vicinity, it was strange that not one of the working party had been wounded before, because they were continually getting their flesh pricked and torn, as they cut their way through the dense undergrowth of the forest. He therefore persuaded the man to be of good heart, promising to cure him, and at any rate to mete out such punishment to his assailant as he deserved, after the old fashion taught in the Bible, an eye for an eye, a tooth for a tooth, or a life for a life.

He then proceeded to try and find out what he could
from the dwarf; first as to whether he was the cause of the sailor's hurt. There was no doubt about the reply to this, the same antics expressive of satisfaction were gone through again, supplemented by the slave reproducing in pantomime the action of pressing something into the back of his left hand with the thumb of his right. The female slave also, by way of corroboration, pointed to her mate and nodded her head. Then he tried to elicit from the culprit what chance there was of recovery. The answer to this was also quite certain, for the black imp first pointed to the sun, which was just past the meridian; then with his finger traced its course down to the horizon, pointed to the wounded sailor, and then himself went through a pantomime of dying. He then jumped up off the ground where he had pretended to fall and die, and went through the action of eating the poor sailor with great gusto, pointing to the assembled white men as sharers in the feast, but carefully leaving out his savage mate, who, it seemed, was not worthy.

So far then the matter was proved beyond cavil; this black devil not only confessed his guilt, but gloried in it, and even seemed to demand commendation for having provided the material for a feast. It was true the white men, and especially the poor victim, did not see things in the same light, and John Smith was urged by everyone to make an end and have the culprit hanged right off as he deserved. But this was not what the investigator wished for. He wanted to find out more about the poisoned thorn, and this he could not do if he killed the user of it at once.

He spent some time trying to discover something, sending out men for several sorts of thorny plants, and shewing them to the dwarf; but he was only met with a sort of sullen defiance, although the woman seemed to urge the man to disclose what he knew. John Smith now thought it
time to take more vigorous measures, and taking hold of
the dwarf's left hand, he drew his own dagger and made
a pretence of cutting it off, at the same distance above the
elbow that the ligature bound the sailor's arm, as if by
way of recompense for the ill inflicted, yet without producing
any impression. Certainly when he proceeded to score a
pretty deep ring round the black arm, and blood flowed,
the savage uttered an exclamation and snarled at him in a
vicious manner; but the woman said something in their
uncouth language, and he lapsed into sullen silence.

He therefore sent for some ropes and a small cane which
he had cut in the forest, intending to have him tied up and
flogged, a punishment which he certainly deserved, even if
the sailor recovered. When, however, the men returned
with the ropes, and together with him advanced on the
dwarf, with the intention of tying him up to a post of the
house, he assumed a very threatening attitude, snarling and
gnashing his teeth like a dog; and John Smith, chancing
to look round at the girl who sat on the ground in charge
of another sailor a little distance off, saw that she was
striving to attract his attention by making a gesture as if
to intimate secrecy, while with one hand she pretended to
take something out of her mop of hair, at the same time
pointing with her other hand to her mate's head. Unfortu-
nately her meaning was not quite understood, and before
the little savage could be overpowered, he succeeded in
snatching another thorn out of his hair and in sticking it
into our hero's cheek. Realising when too late that the girl
had intended to warn him of this, he immediately searched
the savage's head and discovered several more of these
thorns hidden in his hair. These were also undoubtedly
poisoned.

The girl was all this time struggling to get near the men,
who had now succeeded in throwing her mate to the ground and in holding him so securely that he could not move. John Smith ordered the men who held the girl to let her go, as from her previous endeavour to assist, by pointing out where the thorns were hidden, he thought that she meant to betray her mate.

It was well that he did so, for she immediately ran up to the prostrate savage and pressing what looked like a small tumour or swelling on his right side, about opposite the nipple of his right breast, an object about as large as a hazel nut was squeezed out of a hole in his skin. Running to John Smith, she constrained him to sit down on the floor, and standing behind him she tried to squeeze the thorn out with her finger nails. Failing to do this, however, she applied her teeth to it, and actually bit a little piece of flesh out of his cheek, in which the thorn was embedded. The pain made our hero cry out, and the men were for holding back the girl, but he told them to refrain, as he believed that she was doing the right thing, and would most likely know best how to deal with the poison, which, as it was planted in a more dangerous place than in the case of the sailor, certainly required speedy action. This the girl also intimated as well as she was able. Being then allowed to have her own way, she applied her lips to the wound and sucked several mouthfuls of blood from it, which she spat out on the floor; then taking from her ear — where she had placed it for safety, during the time she had been engaged on John Smith's cheek — the object which had been apparently stolen from her mate's body, she carefully opened it by forcing off a sort of lid with her thumb nail, and disclosed a sort of blackish salve with which it was filled. A little of this she rubbed into the wound with the tip of her finger, and giving him the box containing the
remainder, she smiled at him in a very delighted way, and by signs invited him to go away and sleep for a while. This he was very much inclined to do, the salve apparently having the property of a narcotic, as well as — at least he hoped so — that of an antidote to the poison.

The girl assured him, as well as she was able, that he would feel no ill effects; and he did not, even the pain of the wound made by the girl's teeth being allayed by the salve. So, contenting himself by ordering the male dwarf to be tied up and the girl to be allowed to go free, except that she was not to leave the stockade, he went away to sleep.

The girl in the meantime watched the process of securing her mate, apparently exulting over him, because of her release and his bonds. She waited until she found a favourable opportunity to steal the rest of the thorns, of which six more had been taken from the man's hair and laid aside.

Then when the sailors had left him securely tied to a post, she went out and fetched some water in a cup, as if to give him to drink. The sailors allowing her to do this, as it seemed impossible for her to release him without a knife to cut his bonds. But her intention was not so kind as it seemed to be for whilst she was pretending to give him the water to drink, she deftly planted all six of the thorns in his neck, without the men perceiving it; and then, leaving the place, she went and sat down on the floor beside the bench on which John Smith was sleeping.

The first knowledge the sailors had of what she had done, was about half an hour after she had left, when, one of them happening to glance round at the captive, saw that he was struggling in his bonds, and that his face was frightfully contorted. The men crowded round him, and within five minutes his head fell forward and he was dead. The
cause of his death was evident, for there were the thorns sticking in his neck, carefully planted in a line along a main artery. There seemed no reason to regret his death, for in every body's opinion he richly deserved to die. The body was then unbound and laid on a bench, to await John Smith's recovery and the Admiral's order for its disposal.

It was not thought safe, under the circumstances, to leave the girl at large; therefore her hands and feet were tied, so that she could do no damage. She submitted willingly to this discipline, but objected very much to being removed from the room where her patient was sleeping, and was therefore set down on the floor against the wall, from which position she could see his face. Lewes de Havre also stayed in the room in order to watch his friend and assist him when he awoke.

The injured sailor, whose arm had been anointed with the salve, after the ligature had been taken off, was also sleeping comfortably by this time.

After having slept for about three hours, John Smith awoke of his own accord, feeling very little the worse, except that his cheek felt stiff and sore, and that he was very thirsty.

The girl seeing him awake, tried to release herself, and crawled over towards his bed. Lewes having explained why she was tied up, and all that had occurred, both he and our hero decided that it would be only fair to release her and let her go where she liked. The cords with which she was bound were therefore untied, when she immediately carefully examined John Smith's wound and seemed contented with its appearance. She then went out of the room to where her mate had been tied up, and seeing him dead, gave further vent to her satisfaction by making grimaces at him and slapping his face with her hand, after which she ran away into the forest, returning in a very short time with
a bundle of fresh leaves, like those of a small dock. These she bruised between two stones and applied to the wound on her patient's cheek, tying them on with some wilted strips of fibre taken from the leaf stalk of a wild plantain. On being taken to see the wounded sailor, she also very willingly fetched some more leaves and doctored his arm in the same way. This treatment after about a week cured both of them very effectually, the wounds healing with marvellous rapidity, so that, except for a scar on his face which John Smith bore all his life, by way of a souvenir, and as his friends told him, as a mark of his sweetheart's affection, no harm was done. The sailor's arm was, however, stiff and benumbed for several months, probably because the application of the antidote to the poison was not made so quickly.

His hurt having been thus satisfactorily treated, our hero and Lewes made a careful examination of the body of the dwarf, the girl all the time watching them curiously, and evidently by her actions thinking that they intended to dress him for the table and eat him; for she was careful to point out that he should be first cut in half transversely, and the upper half thrown in the river, because it had already become somewhat high, due most likely to the action of the poison. The legs and lower half of the trunk she explained could be cut into joints and roasted, when it would be excellent eating. But this did not quite meet the views of the white men, who were not anxious either to make a meal of their enemy or to try the flavour of black goat: they only wished to examine the curious scars on his body, and especially the pocket from which the poison medicine had been taken.

This was situated on the left side, about five inches below the armpit. It appeared like a fold of the skin, having at the top a narrow slit, into which the little finger could be
pushed; and then, if pressed downwards, a small pocket about an inch deep was disclosed. It was a most extraordinary appendage to the human body — and these dwarfs were certainly human — and not only that, but to people used to going about without any clothes in which pockets could be arranged, it formed a most useful contrivance. The question was how it got there. Neither of our friends had ever seen a kangaroo, and so knew nothing about the useful pouch which she uses for a cradle for her babies, or they might have believed that kind of Nature had also provided these wild people with pockets. A further examination of the body disclosed the fact that on the other side, in about the same position, there was another fold of the skin, which looked as if it had been intended for a pocket, but without success. On the chest, also, there were some long, raised scars and knobs of flesh, which were too regularly arranged to admit of the supposition that they were either the result of wounds received in fights, or of scratches from thorns in the forest. This led them to the conclusion that the pocket, as well as the scars, had been artificially made; but although the scars could be easily accounted for, the little pockets remained a mystery, and our friends turned to the girl for an explanation of it.

When she understood what they wanted to know, she tried to show them how the pocket was made, by picking up a little pebble as big as a pea and pinching up the skin of her own side round it; but seeing that they failed to follow her meaning, she illustrated it in quite an heroic manner the next day, when John Smith tried to find out more about it.

Having provided herself with a rough bit of sandstone, a pebble, some fibres from the withered leaf stalk of the wild plantain, which she deftly rolled into a strong thread on her naked thigh, and a long, sharp and very strong thorn, all of which she had collected on the edge of the forest,
she showed them to John Smith, and leading him to the small room in the fort where he generally slept, she made him sit down on the bed, and squatting down on the ground in front of him, she proceeded to give him a lesson in savage surgery. First she placed the smooth egg-shaped pebble against her body, midway between her breasts, then pressing the two mammae together, and enclosing the pebble between them, she carefully noted and marked the lines of impact, by painting them with a little of the salve which had been used on the poisoned wounds. Then with the sharp sandstone she abraded the skin until the blood flowed freely. When this was done to her satisfaction, and the two surfaces from which the skin had been rubbed off fitted together over the pebble, she took the long thorn — to which she had previously attached the thread — and anointing this needle and thread with the salve, she commenced to sew her breasts together over the pebble, piercing the skin just on the outside of the abraded parts, alternately of the right and left breasts, until, as John Smith writes, it looked as if she were lacing her stays. He attempted several times to stop her, thinking that she must be undergoing great torture; but she would not be stopped, and pointing to the vessel of salve, made him understand that it did not hurt at all, and this from his own experience he could well believe, as the salve appeared to have the property of allaying pain.

Having thus completed the stitching, as far as was necessary for her purpose, she took John Smith's hands in her own, and placing them on either side of her breast, she made him press the two wounded surfaces together, whilst she drew the stitches tight and fastened the thread; then, anointing the wounded surfaces with the salve, she lifted triumphantly to his, and showed him that she had constructed a pocket, even better than her dead mates, as it would hold a much larger article.
This, then, was how it was done, by rubbing the skin off two places on the body, and by approaching these two wounded surfaces and fastening them. After an interval they grew together. Probably this growth was assisted by the wonderful salve. The pebble was intended to give shape to the pocket whilst the seam was joining, after which it would be squeezed out to make room for some treasured possession. It seemed scarcely credible, but they were able to verify it afterwards; for when they got into communication with these dwarfs, they noticed that many of the women had their breasts fastened together, thus forming pockets in which small articles were kept. It was, however, significant that only old women were thus furnished, the operation apparently being only performed after they had passed the period of child-bearing, and when their breasts had become flaccid and pendulous. The reason of this was evident, even if the limitation was not expedient from an aesthetic point of view; for truly the human form divine was not improved by the application of this surgical corset, as was now plainly to be perceived in the present instance. Perhaps the girl thought so herself, for having understood that her master was satisfied with her performance, she proceeded to undress herself to the extent of taking off her stays, when, having applyed a little more of the salve, she seemed as well as ever she was.
CHAPTER VI.

The adventurers were now very anxious to start some sort of trading with the natives. They were too near the Portuguese settlement of Loanda and of those along the coast, north and south of the Zaire River, to be altogether safe; and they were anxious to get on to the East Indies before the combination of merchants, which was being formed in Holland, equalized the commerce and probably monopolized all the trade, a contingency the Admiral felt certain would be the result, as soon as ever they were strong enough to rival the Portuguese ventures subsidized by the King of Portugal, who, indeed, at that time sold licences to merchants for large sums of money, besides monopolizing the trade in pepper himself.

Moreover, the spirit of adventure was rife in England, where there were sea-captains who had inherited the spirit of the Drakes, Hawkins and Frobishers of a former generation, who were only too anxious to take pay from the merchants of the City of London or Bristol, and, if a strong enough expedition could be fitted out, to attack the trade of the Eastern empire in the Indian ocean which the Portuguese had succeeded in building up, and which, with Goa for its metropolis, was the ideal triumph of the great Albuquerque. But both Holland and England realised that the fight for mastery would ultimately lie between themselves; for it was evident that the Portugals had become effete and to the
last degree corrupt. Honesty was a negligible quantity, and the worst vices of the Latin race had become intensified by habitual intercourse with the crafty and cruel Orientals. As with the Spanish in America, so with the Portugals in the East, the new race of mixed blood — resulting from their inter-marriage with native women, mostly of the lower class, the collective conscience of whom was held in the grip of the Roman priesthood — was lazy, cowardly, cruel, treacherous and dishonest to the last degree, and ripe to become subject to a strong master. It was to this mixed race the Portugals had to trust chiefly as agents, for the collection of merchandise from the native traders and the Arabian merchants.

Strong, if cruel, chiefs like Albuquerque, Vasco da Gama, Magalhaens, Estavao and Christavao da Gama, had been succeeded by men like Duarte and Henrique de Menezes, Garcia de Norhona and Martim Afonso de Sousa.

The preaching of the great missionary, Saint Francis Xavier, had also borne its fruits in a threatened crusade, not only against the Mohamadan inhabitants of India, but also against the followers of other faiths, while the mistake made by the earlier adventurers in considering the Hindus, Nairs and other cults of India, as merely uncultivated sects of Christianity had been rectified, and the councils of the Portuguese merchant princes and officials were too much influenced by the religious element to prosper as administrative parliaments.

The English East India Company had already been founded. They had received their charter a year ago, and might be expected to prove formidable rivals; but James Neccy hoped that they would confine their trading to India proper, and leave the Malay countries and the islands beyond the Bay of Bengal alone. He was therefore anxious to get on as fast as possible, and would willingly forego any chance
traffic in Africa, if only his shipwrights could get to work on
his damaged flag-ship. But it was plainly inadvisable to put
unseasoned timber into his wooden walls. He saw, therefore,
that it was hopeless to think of starting for another two
months, which would carry him on to about October of the
year 1600; at which time of the year the hot and rainy
season of the West coast of Africa, as he was well aware,
commenced, when it would be very unhealthy. Up to the
present the weather had been cool and fine, and his people
had suffered very little from the climate.

The neighbourhood of the Portugals had made it a little
unsafe, and there had been so far little chance of trade,
owing to the shyness of the natives. It was therefore deter-
mined to make an advance into the country, so soon as the
PETER ASMODEUS should come up river again, which she
was expected to do, all being well, in a few days time.

In the meantime, in order that the natives should get
used to the noise of firearms, John Smith and Lewes with
a few men went up river each day and shot crocodiles on
the edge of the clearing. The slave girl was always taken
with them, and she, being now quite docile and allowed to
go where she pleased, soon got over her fright when a gun
was fired, although she could not quite understand how it
occurred that crocodiles died from the effects of it.

In an honest endeavour to assist her new master, she
took great pains to construct a small bow and some arrows,
making the bow-string of a sinew taken from the tail of a
large crocodile, and the barbed tips for her arrows from its
teeth, which she laboriously ground to a point and the
proper shape on a stone. She was, however, unable to dress
the arrows with poison, and made John Smith understand
that it could only be procured from her own people, a long
way off in the forest.
Now this poison and its antidote John Smith wished especially to acquire, and he tried all he knew to make the girl understand his wishes, offering her all sorts of articles if she would go into the forest and procure it; but either she did not understand him, or perhaps was afraid to go alone into the forest: at any rate he could not persuade her to do what he wished. Indeed she had become so attached to him, following him about like a dog and refusing to leave him, day or night, that at last she became quite a nuisance, and he was often constrained to tie her up to a post in the stockade, in order to have any personal liberty at all.

In due course the Peter Asmodeus came up the river, having seen no signs of the Portugals, her sick people being very much better for the change. Preparations were therefore hurried on for an expedition into the forest.

It was decided to penetrate as far as the hills which had been passed coming up stream, and from which the mysterious noises had been heard. The plan to be adopted was to take a band of fifty men, forty of whom would be fully armed with matchlocks and swords, while the remaining ten would act as woodcutters and carriers of water and provisions for the march, as well as a few packets of cloth and beads, so that the expedition might be prepared at any moment to disarm hostility by gifts. Some flasks of schnapps and medicines also were not forgotten.

The order of march was carefully arranged. First, two men with hatchets would cut a slight path through the undergrowth; then John Smith with a small compass would follow to direct the line, for a bearing had been taken to the highest hill from the clearing. Following close at his heels came the slave girl, who would not be left behind, and whose knowledge of the forest, besides her voluntary
presence with the party, would probably be useful. After her came in single file three picked matchlock men, to protect the head of the column. With these walked Lewes de Havre, who was in command of the whole of the men-at-arms; and then three more men with axes and wood-knives cleared and improved the path for the main body of the soldiers, who marched three abreast. The carriers were in the centre of this body. The rear-guard was commanded by old Christian Lenthalom; while two of the assistant supercargoes and three other officers marched with the column at intervals along its formation, to keep a sharp look-out for enemies or anything of interest that might occur on the march.

The distance to be traversed was about twenty miles, and it was hoped that by changing the band of woodcutters every hour, and working eight hours each day, the hills would be reached and a good path cleared in about ten days, unless unforseen obstacles, such as rivers or morasses, were encountered, and if the advance was not molested by hostile natives.

They started early in the morning, and after three days' work, in which no particular incident is recorded, and during which they reckoned they had cleared a path about seven miles long, they came to a swamp with deep mud and tangled creepers, which caused some delay, taking two whole days to bridge, even with an augmented force of woodcutters, although it was only about half a mile across. They bridged this place by felling trees along the line of march, and by then making a platform of round logs cut from saplings, which they laid across the trees. Some very large bamboo which was found near by, also materially assisted the construction.

They had, up to this, seen no signs of natives, but two days after, on getting to the other side of the swamp, the
slave girl pointed out to John Smith a slight track crossing their line of route, and set by the side of this track, a slight structure consisting of two small sticks planted in the ground, and each having a fork at the top, while resting in these forks was another straight stick with one end sharpened and pointing along the track. The girl picked this stick off its supports and shewed her master three notches out in it. What these notches meant he could not ascertain; but the girl evidently knew, for she urged him to go along the track with her, but would not allow anyone to go with them. Against the advice of Lewes and the others he decided to go, feeling confidence in the girl's honesty, and contenting himself with taking a matchlock, and by warning Lewes to come to his assistance if he fired. The track was very much overgrown, and often they had to bend nearly double; indeed John Smith could not distinguish that there was a path at all in some places, and found it very difficult to keep up with his guide. After struggling along for about two hundred yards the girl found another sign, the fruit of a tree about as big as a large orange on the point of a stick planted in the ground. Beside this was an irregular-shaped stone, about as large as a man's head, while lying on this stone was another sharpened stick pointing into the forest at right angles to the path. The fruit on being examined proved to be carved into the rude representation of a human face, with the mouth wide open and a slip cut from another fruit of the same description inserted for a tongue. A small hole was bored through the tongue, and the face was turned in the same direction as the stick indicated. All these signs the girl pointed out to her master, and then turning to the direction indicated, she uttered a cry, first softly and then louder, which after an interval elicited a response from the forest. The girl then,
beckoning her master to follow, left the path and went in the direction of the voice. They both had to crawl now in the best way they could, for there was no path, and it took them longer to travel the distance, about thirty yards, than it had done all the rest of the way. At the end of the thirty yards they found a great rock, standing apparently a hundred feet sheer out of the ground. Its sides were precipitous, and John Smith could follow it with his eye for about a bow-shot distance to the right and left. A small stream washed its base, and this, and the forest bordering it, was trampled in all directions, as if by a herd of beasts habitually coming there to drink, and from the enormous foot-prints it was evident to him that at last he had got within ken of elephants, perhaps too near them to be quite safe.

As soon as the girl and he got to the stream, the same cry that had directed them was uttered again from the forest close to them on the right, and on the girl answering it, a short conversation was carried on between her and her invisible friend. Then, signing to him to remain where he was, she ran a little way down stream and darted into the forest. Our hero, although he trusted her himself, thought it better to be prepared for every emergency, so crossed the stream, placed himself with his back to the rock, saw that the match of his gun was smouldering and in good order, and that his rapier was loose in its sheath, and then, as calmly as he could, awaited the next event.

He had not long to wait, for very soon the slave girl came towards him, leading by the hand what he at first took to be some sort of hideous ape, but which on drawing nearer he saw was an old woman. She was quite naked and very ugly. Her body was scarred with wounds in every direction, some recent and some looking as if they had been inflicted long before. Her forehead was ornamented with a
series of long scars, radiating from the centre of each eye to the edge of the hair, as if meant for rays, while the two flaccid bags of her breast were sown together, forming a good-sized pocket. Beside her the young girl looked almost pretty. She was apparently in great spirits, and from her peculiar gestures and actions when bringing forward the old woman to introduce her to John Smith, the latter gathered that she was her mother. Certainly she was not a parent to be proud of, but apparently she was regarded by her daughter with considerable affection.

The old lady was shy, but not from modesty, for she was naked and dit not know it, while her daughter, when with her in the forest, had also discarded her petticoat, and now carried it in her hand; perhaps she intended bestowing it on her mother, or perhaps she did not want to shame her by appearing in society better dressed than she was. At any rate they both came up to John Smith as naked as they were born, and it was probably fear that made the old lady hang back. He wished now to return to the rest of the party, but this did not suit the two ladies, and he was constrained to sit down on the ground by the girl, who, for her mother's edification, and with a great assumption of pride, caressed and fawned on him in her usual manner; and then the two of them squatted down in front of him, and the girl commenced to fish in her mother's pocket. First she brought out some teeth, which looked very like human ones, and which the old lady promptly snatched from her and held tight in her own hand; then two pebbles, which John Smith thought were amulets, but which when the girl put them into his hand he determined to keep, if he was allowed to do so, and there seemed no particular objection to it. He noticed that they looked like rough water-worn glass and that they were shaped
somewhat like irregular cubes, about as large as beech mast. He had heard that this was the appearance of diamonds in the rough, and thought that these might be the precious stones; so without showing any undue elation, as he did not wish to make the women think them of any great importance, he put them away in his pouch.

The girl then produced six nuts which she showed by her smiles she considered of much greater value. She cracked one of them between two stones and offered it to her master; but then, perhaps thinking that he would be afraid it was poisonous, she ate it herself and prepared another one for him, which he did not hesitate to eat, feeling every confidence in her honesty. The other four she signed to him to put away in his pouch, without any objection on the part of her mother.

The nut had a peculiar aromatic flavour, and at first John Smith did not perceive why the girl should exhibit so much joy at finding them, but after a short time he experienced a warm glow all over his body, and a sensation which was new to him. The girl also was exited to a very high degree, and when he involuntarily smiled at her, for she appeared to him almost pretty and very happy, it did not require the slight push which her mother administered, to make her sidle over to him and commence to caress him.

But our hero was not to be thus conquered, for he now understood that he had been given a powerful love philtre, and was offended thereat. He repulsed her amorous advances, and rose to his feet with the intention of going back to his friends at once, sternly signing to the girl to lead the way; but he was checked by the old woman, who said something quickly to her daughter, whose face suddenly expressed great fright, and who quickly made her master understand that there was danger. As he understood what
she meant to impart to him by her signs and gesticulations, there were vast numbers of the big race of savages all round them, waiting to attack when an opportunity occurred. But she reassured him by explaining that her own people would assist them, and that she was not afraid of the result. She also made him understand that they would bring in elephant tusks after the big savages had been fought and beaten.

She was now quite as anxious as he was to get back to their company, and after dismissing her mother, who carried off her petticoat with her — apparently to the girl's relief rather than otherwise — they went back to the edge of the swamp by the same path they had come, and there they found the others anxiously waiting for them.

John Smith had by this time managed to learn some few words of the dialect spoken by the dwarfs; and with this knowledge and the use of many signs and gestures, when they got back to the stockade, he questioned the girl more closely, and made out that her people were always at war with the bigger race of savages, who were in the habit of keeping them as slaves when they could catch them, and of eating all those whom they killed. She admitted also that her people ate their enemies, but that in neither tribe were the women allowed to indulge in this food. Her people were armed with small bows and poisoned arrows, the poison for which, as well as its antidote, was prepared by old men far away in the forest, and was carefully guarded as an important secret from the other race.

This other race was armed with throwing spears or javelins, having broad iron blades. Her people did not use spears; they were not physically strong enough. They tipped their arrows with ivory or fish bone, and carried little iron-headed axes. They had lately also taken to carrying poisoned thorns
in their hair, to use if they found an opportunity when they were taken prisoners.

Her mother had been lurking round the village of the big savages in the hopes of rescuing her, and had found out that it was their intention to attack the white men very soon, when all the young fighting men had returned to the village from the forest, and that they were confident of success. But the girl said that her people would help the white men to easily beat the others, and she made John Smith understand that she wanted to go into the forest and see her people, so as to tell them all about it. After the Admiral had been consulted, she was allowed to go, after having assured them that she would return the next morning.
CHAPTER VII.

The situation was now becoming serious. Neither James Neccy nor any of the other chiefs of the expedition were anxious to come to blows with the natives of either race; they would much prefer peaceful trading; but if the big savages resented their presence in the country and meant to do them injury, there was of course nothing else to do but fight, under which circumstances it would be well to have the dwarfs as allies, because it seemed that there were a good many of the big savages, and considering the contempt in which human life was held by all such people, it might be that they would be able to overpower the white men by mere force of numbers. It was agreed, therefore, not to continue the cutting of the path the next morning, but to await the return of the girl, and then call a meeting of the whole expedition and deliberate as to what action to take next.

The next morning John Smith — who as well as Lewes de Havre had small rooms to themselves in the stockade — when he awoke was astonished beyond measure to see the girl and two dwarf men squatting close beside his bed, and staring intently at him. He sat up on his bed-place, and the girl, first going to his side, crouched down close to him, and taking his hand placed it on her head, and then moving down to his feet, commenced to lick them like a dog.

The men then came forward, and lying down on the bed,
each his bow and six arrows, together with the cords which they wore round their waists, and which supported small axes or tomahawks, proceeded first one and then the other to take his hand, lay it on his head, and then to lick his feet. Then, apparently at a suggestion from the girl, they took from pockets in their skin little cases like that containing the antidote which had been taken from the dead dwarf, and presented them to him. Having thus done homage, and as it seemed to John Smith made themselves his men, they retired a little way and squatted down on the ground whilst he dressed himself.

Having dressed, he went and roused Lewes de Havre, and together they saw all the sentries posted at the corners of the stockade. They were all on the alert, and declared that they had kept careful watch, and as it was bright moon-light it seemed very strange that the girl and her companions had managed to enter the stockade without being perceived; but at any rate there they were to be dealt with, so John Smith and Lewes returned to the former’s room, taking with them three large bowls of porridge, which the cook was just preparing for the morning’s meal.

They found the dwarfs in the same position as they had left them in, so setting the bowls before them, they invited them to eat, and their hunger being satisfied, with the girl’s assistance they started negotiations with them. They ascertained that the bigger race lived in a town in the hills, towards which the path was being cut, and that they meant to fight the white men and kill and eat all of them.

It was found impossible to ascertain for certain how many fighting men they had, for the dwarfs seemed to have a very rudimentary idea of expressing numbers, at least so far as could be understood, although probably from their own point of view they explained to their hearers correctly
how many men of both races would take part in the fight. Their method of counting consisted of opening and shutting their hands, and then at intervals drawing short lines in the dust of the floor, until at the end of their endeavours, to make the respective numbers of the three forces plain to their questioners, there appeared thirteen lines, headed by a long stick with the bark on, as opposed to eight lines headed by a short stick with the bark on, and two long and one short lines headed by a long peeled stick. To make their hosts understand that the two lines and a half with the peeled stick, meant the white men, the girl fetched a matchlock and laid it down beside that row, and she herself sat on the ground beside the short unpeeled stick, to emphasize that it meant the dwarf army.

This was all very plain so far as it went, and certainly was meant to express that the proportions were as thirteen to eight of the savage races, and that the white men were in much smaller numbers; but whether the numbers thirteen and eight represented hundreds, or fifties, or scores, or dozens was a moot point. Both the white men were of the opinion that they meant hundreds, for the lines drawn for their party thus indicated their correct number, the expedition consisting of between two hundred and fifty and two hundred and sixty men all told. Moreover, it seemed reasonable to reckon that there were over a thousand of the big savages if there was a town in the vicinity, and also when the crocodile was shot, the noise made by the stampede of the savages was certainly caused by a great quantity of people.

They were unable to find out from the dwarfs when the attack was to be made, or why the savages were angry with them. They could not, in fact, obtain any more information, for the two little men were evidently becoming uneasy, because the stockade was by this time beginning
to get busy, as the men had all had their breakfasts and were going about their usual avocations.

Lewes therefore went to fetch the Admiral and the Captains, to have a short consultation in John Smith's room, before the general conference of the adventurers, which was to be held that day; and after the position had been explained to the Admiral and Captains, the two dwarfs were ceremoniously given their weapons back again by the Admiral, and also a pair of breeches each and a coat, and were then taken round the stockade, where they were shown the armoury of matchlocks and the cannons mounted on their banquettes. These weapons they could not understand, so Lewes trained a demi-culverin next the river, aiming at a large crocodile which was floating down with the tide, and firing it he pointed out to them that he had certainly killed the beast, for it was floating on belly upwards, and was convulsively kicking, whilst the water was reddened by its blood. The noise made by the gun frightened all three of the dwarfs a good deal however, they soon got over it, and took a great interest in the reloading; but they were evidently very nervous and were therefore allowed to depart, the girl staying behind.

At the general conference which was held soon after, and which was attended by the whole of the expedition except the sentries on duty, it was decided to go on with the road-making as before, but at every interval of about four miles, small block-houses, capable of holding about ten matchlockmen, should be erected to guard the line of retreat, supposing that the working party should be attacked. These blockhouses were to be protected by clearing the under-growth all round them, so that the enemy could not come to close quarters without being for some time within range of the matchlocks; and it was ordered that as soon as the
working party heard firing at one of the blockhouses, it was immediately to come back as fast as possible to assist in beating off the savages, while a small force advanced at the same time from the fort to cover the retreat. John Smith was also quite sure that directly a fight began the dwarfs would come to their assistance, but of course this could not be depended on, for after all it might be that the dwarfs were in league with the other savages, and were only pretending to ally themselves with the white men in order to get a fair opportunity to attack them, when they could do so with the best chance of success.

The first thing to do was to erect a little fort on the edge of the morass nearest the river. This took them three days, during which time nothing was seen of the enemy; but each day two fresh dwarfs were brought into the fort by the slave girl, and what was very satisfactory about these visits was that each pair of them brought in a fine elephant's tusk, so that at last the Admiral was gratified by the prospect of trade. The girl now began to be very useful and to show that she had the interests of the white men at heart, for whereas the Admiral when the first tusk was brought in, out of sheer happiness that his wishes were at last being fulfilled, presented each of the dwarfs with a boy's coat and pair of breeches, when the next day two more men brought in another tusk, and were about to be given a suit each in exchange, she quietly took one suit away from the man who brought it in, and laid it aside, and then with her own hands dressed one dwarf in the coat and the other in the breeches, sending them off thus strangely attired, to the great amusement of the men in the stockade.

It also became a fashion directly the dwarfs arrived, to give each of them a large bowl of porridge with lumps of salted fat pork in it, which they seemed to enjoy very much.
Things went on like this for another ten days, until the road had been cut for about ten miles through the forest, and two small stockades built, so that some of the men began to think that the savages did not mean to attack them at all. But this was only what they hoped for and the hope was very short-lived. The dwarf girl began to show signs of great excitement, often crawling into the thick forest in advance of the line of march, apparently with the intention of spying; and one morning when the usual pair of dwarfs came in with the elephant’s tusk, she kept them, and insisted on them accompanying the working party, whose progress was now of course very slow, as they had to march ten miles to and from the end of the cleared path to the fort, so that it was seriously considered whether it would not be better to build a stockade and place in it permanently a force of about fifty men, so that so much time need not be wasted in travelling to and fro; and this would most likely have been done, only on the day on which it was to have been started a most important discovery was made, and that was the end of the forest, which they reached about midday. The timber had gradually got thinner, and ultimately merged into an immense field of coarse grass, gradually rising to the summit of a low range of hills, which again was crowned with trees. The dwarf girl explained that the town of the big savages was on the other side of the trees, in a big field like the one in front of them, but with short grass. This prairie seemed a much more dangerous bit of country to traverse, in the face of a savage foe, than the forest was, because in the latter the javelins could not be used with effect, whereas here the savages could evidently creep up without being seen to within throwing distance, and do much damage before they could be checked.

The obvious thing to do was to burn the grass, so that
there should be no cover left, but to do this was tantamount to declaring war, for it was not to be imagined that the big savages would view with equanimity a force of strangers advancing towards their town. They would be bound to consider such an action as hostile; and they on their side had not as yet done anything to provoke hostility; indeed, for many days, since the episode of the shooting of the crocodile, hardly anything had been seen of them, although it was certain that they were watching the advance, because they were often heard in the forest on both sides of the path, while occasionally they were seen to pop up and then hide again in the undergrowth. Moreover, the dwarf girl and her companions were very excited and anxious.

It was very difficult to know how to organise the advance, because they did not know how far off the town was from the edge of the prairie. This appeared to be about three miles across, and if it was so, and the town was near the other edge of it, or at any rate only a short distance through the timber which they could see on the hill-top, it might be possible to reach it in one march from the fort in the morning and get back again at night; that was if they burnt the grass first and the savages did not resist them. If, on the other hand, they had to fight, there was very great uncertainty as to how it might turn out. It was possible, if they had good fortune, that they would be able to turn the savages out of the town, and take possession of it themselves so that they could rest the night of the fight in the stronghold of their vanquished enemies. This would be very satisfactory. Or if they could not do that, they might have to bivouac where they could, and protect themselves as well as possible under the circumstances, until the next day allowed them to resume the fight, or to retreat to the fort.
The three leaders discussed their chances very anxiously, and ultimately decided that the first thing to do at any rate was to burn the grass, and then go back to the fort and submit the matter to the Admiral and the others for advice.

Now the grass was very dry. It consisted chiefly of a coarse species growing in tussocks, each with many stalks bearing splendid plumes of efflorescence, which made the whole plain appear like a waving sea of foam. Since the adventurers had been in the country, now nearly four months, there had been hardly any rain, and except the plants under the actual shade of the forest, everything was as dry as tinder.

It was summer in this region: the forest trees were all bearing ripening fruit, and the streams and rivulets crossed on the march were nearly dried up, so that it was quite a common occurrence now to hear, and even see, wild beasts, which had come down from the higher land in search of water. Often their nerves were shaken by what they supposed to be the roar of the lion, and the noise made by huge beasts crashing through the forest to avoid their approach. The slow matches on their guns were attentively looked to and kept glowing for the nervous ones of the party were afraid of the chances of the forest; but they had a much greater superstitious dread of its fabled monsters, and the witchcraft of the giants and dwarfs with which, in their imagination it was filled, than they had of the actual prowess of the savages. Lions and elephants, mighty river cows and great serpents, were known only to the majority of the adventurers as terrible beasts that were prone to attack and rend and trample from mere viciousness. Little was actually understood of their real habits, and what was known only tended to frighten the men from its very vagueness, which
their sojourn of four months on the outskirts of the forest and immunity from attack had not as yet dispelled.

It was agreed that the quickest and safest way to get across the intervening prairie between the forest and the hill-tops would be to first clear it by burning, as they would then be enabled to at least see any attacking party for some distance before they came to close quarters. Accordingly fire was set to the edge of the grass, which soon began to blaze up; and as the slight wind which prevailed was blowing towards the hills, it gradually spread wider and wider, until it was a living wall of flame, retreating like a brilliant army up the slope towards the hills, and leaving in its track blackened devastation, typical of the course of a conquering horde.

But it was doing something more, for its advance was at last disclosing plainly to the adventurers enemies and friends all at one time.

None too soon did Lewes de Havre form his troop into a column of threes, to retreat along the homeward path; for as the fire spread to right and left, hundreds of dark warriors sprang up out of the grass, rushed back to the forest, and closed in on the little band on either flank. And as they ran they flourished over their heads sheaves of four or five javelines, broadbladed and dangerous looking. But as the big savages rushed back to cover, it was seen that they were followed by an undulating line in the tall grass, and the slave girl clutched John Smith's arm as she pointed to this phenomenon with great glee, and made him understand that this waving of the grass, at some distance in the rear of the rushing savages, was caused by her smaller tribesmen, whose heads were not high enough to show above the feathery plumes of the prairie.

Then for the first time certainty of assistance from their
ugly little allies was assured to the band of adventurers, and they were all of them greatly heartened by the knowledge, so that the retreat was begun in good spirits. It was led by old Christian Lentholm, while the rear was commanded by Lewes and John Smith. This was always the order of march of the column when returning to the fort, thus reversing the way it was led out to work in the forest each morning.

Each man knew what he was to do in case of an attack by the savages; under no circumstances was a piece to be fired at random, but promptly on seeing an enemy, or even sufficient movement in the forest to make it plain that an enemy was behind a bush, the outside file of the column was to halt and fire, and then to pass his matchlock back to the centre file of the column for reloading. This centre file consisted, all along the line, of the men who had started out without matchlocks to do the cutting and clearing of the path, and the officers. All of these men, as well as the matchlockmen and the officers in command, besides their heavy weapons, carried pistols in their belts, so that the little force of about sixty men could deliver quickly over one hundred shots; and as they were ordered to fire independently and carefully, there seemed a reasonable hope that they could, as they marched along, keep a considerable crowd of savages, — who could not use their javelins very effectively in the dense forest, — at bay.

But it was, to say the least of it, dangerous work to thus march in a long attenuated column, for nearly ten miles through the forest, with a savage enemy on either flank who might at any moment make a rush and commence stabbing with the broad-bladed spears.

For the first mile or two they were not interrupted, and they began to hope that they would get back without having
to fight; but, before they got to the swamp and its bridge of round timbers, the fun began. The first shot fired was, appropriately enough, an arrow from the bow of one of the dwarfs, who proudly trotted along, one on either side of John Smith, and who, with the girl behind him, seemed as if they had constituted themselves his especial body-guard. Apparently one of the sharp-eyed little savages had detected a movement, or seen part of the body of a naked savage on the edge of the space, which had luckily been cleared of undergrowth for some distance back from the path, for suddenly he stopped dead in his tracks, and drawing back the arrow, which was carried adjusted to the string, to his ear, with a twang it flew across the comparatively clear space, and certainly hit its mark, for a big savage stumbled with a cry back into the cover, regardless of exposing himself.

It seemed as if this acted like a signal, for suddenly, with a great shout, a crowd of warriors, brandishing their weapons, appeared at the edge of the cleared ground, and poising their javelins, threw them at the little band of white men; but they did hardly any harm, as the distance was too great, so that not one in fifty reached the path, and those few which did were too spent to penetrate the strong leather jerkins of the matchlockmen, who were also well protected with morions, breast and back plates, as well as with great boots, which, hot as they were for marching, were willingly worn as a protection against the thorns and other dangers of the forest, and now proved their usefulness as defensive armour in a fight.

Not so easily did the savages escape from this first encounter, for the order to fire as soon as ever a savage became visible to a marksman, was very literally carried out. Within the space of two or three minutes, several hundreds of savages were all at once visible, and within point blank range; so,
promptly, between twenty and thirty guns spoke their message from either side of the long column, and with very deadly effect, for many of the enemy were seen to bite the dust, some quite dead, some only wounded, but all who fell were left by their tribesmen where they lay. Frightened by the noise of the guns, the survivors rushed with a cry of terror back to the shelter of the forest. Their attack had never met with such a response before, and their knowledge of the white men's strength in weapons was bought dearly. The little band stood still in its tracks until the weapons were reloaden; then it marched on over the bridge, and picking up the garrison of the small blockhouse on its way, reached the fort without further incident.

Long before they got home, the two dwarfs had left the column, and they did not return again until some time during the night; for next morning, when John Smith awoke, he found both of them and the girl squatting in his room. As soon as they saw he was awake, the two men came forward and each commenced to unroll a package wrapped in many coverings of green plantain leaves, until they disclosed the contents, which were gruesome enough and not calculated to favourably impress a white man early in the morning; for each package contained a choice assortment, of what, at the first glance, were recognisable as parts of the human body. Internal members, as well as small joints and organs, like fingers and ears, were all represented in the bill of fare, which had been carefully prepared for the delectation of our hero. It was a friendly tribute, and one could understand that if offered to a chief of the tribe would have been properly appreciated; but as it was, it failed to arouse the enthusiasm which was evidently, at least by the male dwarfs, expected of it. The recipient's first care, after he had dressed himself, was to have the morsels of poor humanity
buried outside the stockade. This seemed to answer the purpose, from the dwarf's point of view, equally as well as if they had been eaten: probably they considered that the burial was an offering made to the earth god, instead of to the belly god, although it must have seemed a little wasteful to them.

From the gesticulations of the dwarfs, and from the translation of their narrative made by the girl, he gathered that a great battle had been fought between the big savages and the dwarfs, and that the latter had the best of it. Both the men and the girl made him understand that the white men should now march on to the big savages' town, without further delay.

This advice seemed good to the Admiral and the others when they heard of it, the only question was, how was it to be done. It was certain that they could not march out nearly twenty miles, fight a battle, — for nobody thought for a moment that the town would be surrendered without a fight, — and then march back another twenty miles to the fort. If they waited to build another stockade on the edge of the forest to retreat to, it was certain that what was built during the day-time, would be destroyed by their enemies during the night, so that their labour would only be lost. Therefore the proper thing to be done seemed to be to make a dash for the town, take it, and stay there for the night, after driving the savages out of it; and the only question which remained, was whether they were strong enough to do this.

That it would be worth doing, nobody doubted; for not only did the slave girl make John Smith understand that the big savages had great quantities of ivory, but so far as she could be understood, he believed she tried to explain that there were great quantities of food, probably grain of some
sort, in the town, as well as cows giving milk. If this were so, it would be a great God-send, as the salted beef and pork casks were beginning to get low, although vast quantities of fish had been caught and had latterly constituted a chief part of their diet. Fresh meat and a store of grain would compensate for much expense of labour in marching, and the prospective fight did not in the smallest degree discourage a single man, for they were quite prepared to risk their lives for gain, and the chance of sacking a town — even if it was only a savage one, and ivory and slaves the only booty besides good victuals — raised every one's spirits.

Further encouragement of this design, resulted from a small expedition made by John Smith at his faithful attendant's instigation. She led him into the forest for about half a mile along very slight track, until she heard a peculiar call, more bird-like than human, and on her answering it, four dwarf men came out of the forest and, squatting down on the ground, proceeded to unload from their backs each a small carrying basket made of split canes. On these being emptied on to the ground, a pile of human ears, freshly severed from the heads, was disclosed. These the girl counted out into heaps of ten pairs each, until she had got eight heaps and six over. It was easy to see that these ears originally belonged to the enemy, for they were quite a different shape to those growing on the heads of the dwarfs who had brought them in. If, therefore, eighty-six had been killed in the fight, it must have been continued in the forest by the dwarfs, who were probably numerous; and in answer to John Smith's enquiry, he was made to understand that only about thirty of the dwarfs had been killed. Probably the eighty-six included those killed and wounded by the match-lockmen in the first attack, but even then it proved that in the forest the dwarfs were as good fighters as the bigger
race; but it might be different in the open, where the javelins and the more athletic men would have an advantage. Also, because of their numbers the white men might find them dangerous under these circumstances.

The girl then led her master along the new road until they got to the first block-house, and when within a few yards of it, she called out something in her own language, with the result that about twenty dwarfs, all armed with bows, filed out of the door and grouped themselves in front of the house for his inspection. So also on the return journey to the fort, in answer to her cries, at short intervals, small parties of from three to ten dwarfs were continually showing themselves along the route, both to the right and left of the path.

This was very satisfactory, for it evidently meant that instead of being watched by a cordon of hostile savages, the camp and the road were both guarded by the friendly dwarfs. Also it meant that there was a state of war between the two races, that the dwarfs were eager to go on with the fight, and that they claimed the white men as their allies.

When John Smith made his report to a general meeting the same evening, and told them all he had been shown, he volunteered the opinion that the big savages were most likely all driven out of the forest on the hither side of the grassy plain, which by this time was probably burned clear of cover. Everybody was most enthusiastically in favour of a dash for the hills the next day, before the enemy had time to prepare any systematic defence. It was decided to do this, and John Smith was instructed to let the dwarfs know of the intention at once. He therefore returned to his quarters and carefully explained to the slave girl what was intended, which was that a force of one hundred of the white men would start before sunrise the next morning and
make straight for the town of their enemy, killing all of
them that they could. He also explained that he expected
the dwarfs to help fight. When the girl understood what
was contemplated, she shewed her joy by embracing his knees
and licking his boots, after which she led him once more
to the edge of the clearing, where, having called some of
her friends, she explained to them the situation very care-
fully, so that her master was satisfied that they understood
all about it and would co-operate in the attack.
CHAPTER VIII.

As soon as John Smith got back to the stockade, the force designed to attack the village was chosen by the Admiral, and when all of the members were designated, they were enjoined to go to rest at once, so that they might be fresher for the start in the early morning, while those who were to be left behind for the defence of the Fort and ships, occupied themselves far into the night in preparing the arms and two days' provisions for every man who was going, as it was very uncertain what their luck might be.

Two hours before sunrise the next morning, the force was mustered in the misty half light. It consisted of one hundred men carefully picked out by Lewes de Havre, who was in command of the expedition, and who was to be assisted by John Smith as his lieutenant. Each man was armed with a matchlock, a pistol and a sword, and carried in a bag at his back two days' provisions, as well as his ammunition. They all wore light steel morions and back and breast armour, as well as strong high boots, for it was wisely determined that, even at the risk of tiring the men, it would not be safe to go without this protection against the javelins of the savages. The men, who had all had a good breakfast of strong porridge before the muster, were in excellent spirits and knew exactly what they had to do. They would march to the end of the forest and, if not interrupted, rest for about an hour whilst they had another meal; then they would advance across the burnt plain, and when they found
the town, or whatever the trees on the other side concealed, attack it, and make good a settlement for the night. The following morning would determine their future action, word of which they promised to send back to the fort if possible by the dwarfs.

Exactly at four o'clock in the morning, James Neecy's trumpets sounded the advance, and the column, headed by Lewes de Havre and John Smith, the latter closely attended by the dwarf girl, started to cross the clearing for the end of the path leading into the forest; and as if the notes of the trumpets had also summoned them from the forest, the edge of the timber was seen to be lined with hundreds of the dwarfs, who stepped out into the open, and flourishing their bows over their heads, set up a queer little yell, which, starting from the end of the path, rippled off to the right and left far beyond the point of vision in the misty early morning. It was like the front rank of a regiment of soldiers numbering off their files. The dwarfs stood steady until the head of the column entered the gloom of the forest, and then, with a final flourish of their bows, they too, sprang into the damp and lowering darkness.

It was a good omen and raised everybody's spirits, for now all realised that the little band was to be supported in the enterprise by allies, who were especially well adapted to protect their flanks during the march through the forest, a part of the work which was the most trying to the temper and nerves of the men; and as they gaily stepped out into the forest, they were cheered by the sight of three or four little black men keeping level with the head of the column on either side of the path through the cleared part of the forest, and doubted not but that the line was continued far out on either wing in the dense undergrowth, where it could not be seen.
Two hours' march brought them to the first stockade on the path, and promptly on their approach, the twenty dwarfs who had occupied it came out, and going down right and left of the column prepared to follow on in the rear. But first they indulged in a short rest, and then the march was continued until the second block-house and the swamp had been passed. At the second block-house another little band of dwarfs was found, and duly tacked on to the rear of the column.

And now that they were approaching the end of the forest, some anxiety was felt by the leaders as to what might be the state of the plain, and whether they were to be allowed to cross it without interference. It was getting on towards mid-day and the time for a meal and a good rest before the attempt was made; so a halt was called. Haversacks were opened, and after two or three men had been posted fifty yards in advance, the whole party sat down on the ground for an hour's rest and a good repast. But John Smith's anxiety would not allow him to rest, so snatching a hasty mouthful, and getting the girl to call up ten of the dwarfs, he went cautiously forward over the intervening half mile to the edge of the forest to reconnoitre. He himself went very carefully, but he noticed that his escort took no particular precautions, chattering amongst themselves quite loudly; so he surmised that all the big savages were out of the forest, which indeed proved to be the case, for on his return to the troop, and when they finally advanced, nothing was seen of them until they had all got clear of the forest.

When they were all out, the formation, from a column with three files marching abreast, as was necessary in the narrow path, was altered to that of a compact body having a front of twenty-five men, marching four deep, with the two commanders posted on either wing.
As far as the eye could see, to right and left, and up to the trees on the other side of what was two days ago a waving sea of beautiful plumy grass, the whole ascending plain to the low timber-crowned hills was now a blackened field of ashes, with no cover for so much as a rabbit; and if the big savages were to attack them with anything like vigour and in their overwhelming numbers, both the leaders felt that their situation was desperate; but they made their arrangements for the best way to meet the danger, and, as the event proved, with success.

When they had got well out into the plain, the dwarfs began to appear at the edge of the forest, so the white men halted for them to come up, and to see what formation they intended to assume. First, John Smith called up the girl, who was apparently the only woman in the force, and who, not to be behindhand in the fight, had armed herself with a bow and a tomahawk like her tribesmen. At her master's request for information as to the direction of the town to be assaulted, she pointed to a break in the line of trees in front of them, and to this point the march was directed.

The dwarfs, to the number, as far as could be judged, of four or five hundred, had meanwhile all emerged and drawn up behind the matchlockmen, but without duplicating their ranks, so that they stretched out in a long thin line to right and left. In this formation the advance was commenced, but it did not continue for long, for either the dwarfs were afraid to meet the bigger race in the open, or the present formation did not suit their war tactics. At any rate, for some reason, they gradually closed in, until they were all marching in a compact crowd behind the matchlockmen. Then, when they had advanced for about a mile into the open, they first caught sight of the enemy, about three
miles off, as they were just emerging from the low place in the line of timber. Gradually their numbers increased, until it seemed to the leaders of the little band of white men that nearly a thousand must be in view; and these soon began to form into battle array. Slowly the mass took upon itself definite shape, and at last it assumed the appearance of a great compact triangle or wedge, with the apex directed to the exact centre of the band opposing it, and in this formation commenced to move deliberately down the hill.

A few seconds sufficed for the quick military intellect of Lewes de Havre to grasp the situation and devise the best means to meet it. It was evidently the intention of the savage enemy to advance deliberately, until within a short distance, and then with a rushing charge, to overwhelm them, probably without throwing a single javelin. It was a well-conceived idea, and under some circumstances might prove successful, if their enemies were foolish enough to stand still in a compact mass to be trodden under foot. But sharper intellects were at work, guided by a leader who had been trained in the open battle-fields of European warfare, and quickly John Smith understood his colleague's plan. None too soon did they commence to alter their formation, for the little dwarfs behind the rampart of white men were already beginning to show signs of fear. Perhaps they had before, when driven from their forests into the open, experienced the rush of such a wedge of athletic warriors, whose charge their feeble little arrows, however dangerous they might be ultimately by reason of the poison, could not stop; nor could they prove so effective within a short distance as the broad-bladed javelins; any more than their puny little tomahawks would be of any use to them at close quarters. Perhaps they meant to indicate this, when
they started their advance behind the white men from the forest, in extended order.

At any rate, when they saw their leaders take up positions exactly in the center of the front rank, and deploy their men, so that they ultimately assumed a long array of a single rank, they quickly extended their own party, so as to even overlap the front rank at either end, and they looked very much happier after the change had been made.

All the time this change of formation was being made, the advance was not delayed, for it was held that any hesitation shewn would have a bad effect in encouraging the enemy, as well as in disheartening the dwarfs, so that, as the former still came on, the battle became every moment more imminent.

Still either side continued to advance, until only about half a mile separated the opposing armies, and it could be seen from the agitation and waving of spears, as well as by the excited shouts in the ranks of the wedge of big savages, that they were preparing for their rush. It could be "felt" also from behind, for there was an agitation and a murmur, as well as a half-nervous turn to the rear amongst the dwarfs, who began to double and treble their files behind the single line of white men. John Smith saw the flinching, and quickly turning round, he thrust the slave girl to the front, and adjusting her arrow to the bow-string, he left her two or three paces in advance of the line, from which position, as she continued to proudly advance, she shouted back some few words to her tribesmen that put heart into them; for they grasped their bows tightly, and flourishing them over their heads, answered her with the little cry, which rippled off to the right and left, by which they had once before expressed their readiness to fight with the white warriors.
And now the critical moment approached nearer and nearer when the struggle of the few, backed by the feeble little men of the forest, but armed with the science of civilization and governed by quick brains trained to war, was to be decided with the strong savages fighting on their favourite battle-field of the open plain, and doubly armed in their utter disregard of life.

Suddenly a great savage springs ahead, a dozen paces before the apex of the wedge, and holding up his sheaf of javelins above his head, he shouts an order, which stops the phalanx dead in their tracks. Then he commences to slowly chant what is apparently a war song, beating time by raising his feet and stamping on the burnt ground, first with the right foot and then the left, all the time facing his own men and with his back to his enemies. Gradually the time of his chant increases and gradually, rank by rank, his followers join in the chorus, marking time in cadence with their chief, until at the end of five minutes or so there is a mighty roar of sound from the serried battle of naked, black, savage life, and a trembling of the earth, as, like one man, first their right feet and then their left fall with a thud to the ground.

They are fast working themselves into a frenzy of valour and madness, and their rush when it comes will surely be irresistible: and come it will, for suddenly the great chief, without losing the rhythm of his chant, and without for an instant missing his step, which is now fast and furious, turns to face his foes, and first uttering a great shout, he casts a javelin before him a full thirty fathoms, and then springing high into the air, he starts forward at a run, as if eager to embrace the unknown death which is awaiting him. And after him, with a mighty shout, dash his tribesmen in the headlong charge of fanatical enthusiasm or, may it be, the
patriotic ardour of a strong people eager to defend their hearths and homes from the encroachment of an alien and calculating race, bent only on the sordid accumulation of wealth, and eager only to gain possession of a new market, before the traders of another nation discover it, and by offering their goods at a lower rate, spoil the great profits to be made by the first arrivals. No matter to the merchant the expense of savage life, if his beads and his cheap linens will bring him ivory and gold and slaves; his is not the conscience that will flinch or fear retributive justice, provided he lines his pockets with ducats.

In such a strain as this does John Smith, the sentimental dreamer, interpolate his description of the fight; and so, as a true historian of his adventures, it behoves me to follow his example. But it would be well to return to the battle, and describe how the headlong charge of the big savages was met.

Like the savages, Lewes de Havre and his men were marking time, but quietly, and with a fixed and definite purpose. First, the line was deployed, until an interval of about three yards was left vacant between the white men all along the line, while religiously the little coloured men followed the movement, sidling out to right and left, until the whole front overlapped at either end the width of the base of the compact triangle of the foe. Then John Smith and Lewes, who were stationed side by side in the centre of the line, deliberately commenced a retrograde movement by stepping backwards, whilst the extreme ends of the line continued to advance, with the result that the two halves of the force, working on the twenty-sixth man in the centre of each half as a pivot, swung half forward, and the other half back; and by the time the savages started on their rushing charge, there was prepared for them a
funnel-shaped death-trap, exactly adapted to fit their wedge. And this owing to their frenzy, and to the fact that care had been taken that the movement was deliberately carried out, with every face turned to them, they had not perceived the full significance of, until the apex of their array had passed the widely-extended lips of the funnel; and then it was too late to stop, for the pressure from behind pushed forward the leading men, so that even if their commander wished to halt or to alter his formation, he could not do so. They were bound to go forward. Frantically their leader endeavoured to extend and open out the front of his regiment, and charge to the right and left to meet the two wings of his adversary; it was too late; and he was one of the first to fall, and to be trampled out of all semblance of humanity by his own people.

So soon as Lewes saw that the wedge had entered the funnel, he gave the signal by a shrill whistle for firing to commence, and as the onrushing foemen advanced opposite each pair of matchlockmen to the right and left, the latter fired into the head of the mass, deliberately and with precision, for they were the picked marksmen of the expedition, and few shots were wasted. Indeed many of the heavy bullets did more than their allotted share of the havoc, by disabling more than one foeman; until the point of the wedge became blunted and altogether disorganised, which speedily had the effect of demoralising the whole force, for the bravest of the savages were in the van.

As the firing commenced, John Smith and Lewes clasped hands and said a last word of good-bye, for it was uncertain if they would come out of the fight alive, and then separating again, they commenced to open out the funnel by swinging back the wings, now on the extreme ends as pivots, for it was quite certain that the one round from the matchlocks
would not stop the mad rush; nor even when the enemy, by reason of their advance, became more involved and at closer quarters, so that the pistols and the bows of the dwarfs could be effectively used, would they be able to stop. A way must be made for them to pass through, and then the crux of the whole battle would be the moment when, having passed through between the ranks of the invaders, they might re-form in time to charge back again before the white men were able to re-load.

It was a critical time, and there was some reason for the Captains to shake hands and commend one another to God's mercy, when they separated to swing their lines apart; for, if after the savages had passed, they turned back quickly and charged, before preparation could be made to receive them, the two leaders would be the first men to bear the brunt. But the savages were being badly stricken, for now the pistols were beginning to play on them, and the dwarfs, seeing the dire results of the matchlock fire on the head of the phalanx, where all the best men of their enemies were concentrated, had plucked up courage and begun to pour their little dart-like arrows into the closely-packed ranks, so that the white men got a little breathing space to reload, and as the pistols were handier and quicker to manipulate, most of the men first turned their attention to them. But it was difficult, for the big savages, understanding by this time what sort of a trap they had got into, began now to throw in their javelins, and many of the dwarfs, who were entirely unprotected, went down as well as two or three of the white men, who got hit on the unprotected part of the thighs and the face; and once or twice small parties of the savages got together and attempted to charge, but their hearts failed them, and they got nearer the line than twenty paces, from which position, after throwing a
javelin each, they turned back, not being able to face the stinging little arrows which they knew meant death. Therefore the almost ridiculous — if it were not so tragic — sight was seen of men in the act of poising their javelins, suddenly stop, snatch a little arrow from their flesh, and grotesquely contort themselves in attempts to get at wounds which were more often than not situated in parts of their bodies to which they could not get their mouths to suck the poison. But when they were able to reach the spot, they bit out great gobbets of flesh, so as to allow the blood to flow freely, for they were evidently well aware of the danger. Probably they had never before met the dwarfs in the open plain under such circumstances as the present, when the little men had found courage enough to face them; for it was evident that, it was only owing to the support given by the white men, and even then reluctantly, that the little men plucked up heart the fight in the open. But now, when they saw the damage done by the firearms, they were only too eager, and if they had not been restrained, would have rushed on to the enemy with their little tomahawks.

And now the base of the phalanx having passed the extremities of the lines of white men and dwarfs, these lines began to approach each other in the rear of the enemy, with the intention of forming a barrier between them and the road to the town. Slowly and deliberately the manoeuvre was carried out, the white men loading their pistols and firing independently as opportunity offered, and the little savages, who intelligently followed every movement, raining in a flight of arrows whenever the enemy got together in groups with the intention of charging the line. It became at last almost a massacre, for the big men had no chance, the pistols and bows carried further than they could cast their javelins, and early in the fight all their chiefs and
brave men had gone down, so that there was nobody to rally them and organise a decisive charge.

It was with no little relief that the two wings of the adventurers joined up again and formed a continuous line behind the first battle ground. John Smith and Lewes simultaneously stepped out to the front from their respective ends and quickly ran along the line to meet in the centre, ordering their men to charge their matchlocks as quickly as they could, for the cowed enemy were retiring out of range of the pistols and bows, and seemed to be gathering together for another charge, which would be serious if there was no musketry fire to meet it. The little men too had used nearly all their arrows.

Up to this point of the fight only two white men had been killed and six wounded, two seriously by javelins, one in the face and the other in the right; but many more of the dwarfs, who were unprotected by armour or clothes, had been killed and wounded; but these little warriors were very jubilant, for certainly over a hundred of their enemies lay dead on the field, and many more were continually falling to the ground, as the poison of the arrows with which they were wounded had its effect. Moreover the enemy were evidently, and for the first time, showing fear of the dwarfs, or perhaps of their new allies. Before they were able to present a new front and prepare for a fresh charge all the matchlocks and pistols were reloaded, and the white leaders thought it better that they should commence the attack in their turn, and perhaps with one well-directed volley finish the rout of their foes, who were still within range of the matchlocks.

Lewes therefore gave the word for every other man to drop his matchlock to the present and fire, and then, after an interval of a minute or two, for the other half of the
force to fire. The effect of these two volleys was disastrous for the enemy; they were fired right into their crowded array, and it may be safely said that every bullet, on the average, hit more than one man, so that the confusion in their ranks precluded any hopes of their being able to again rally for a charge. The word was then given for a counter charge, and the matchlocks were laid on the ground, as they would only encumber the men. The line moved steadily forward, with the intention of pouring in a volley from the pistols and bows as soon as they got within range, and then making a rush sword in hand, which could not fail to drive the remnant into the forest, even if they were not killed, every one of them.

But first there was a serious obstacle to overcome, for as soon as the advancing line reached the ground which was thickly strewn with the dead and wounded enemy, these latter justified their savage instincts by fighting to the last, even the dying striving to stab their foes as they passed.

It was cruel work killing these half-dead men, and the white men revolted from it: not so, however, their impish allies, for at a word from the girl, — who throughout the fight had acted intelligently as John Smith's lieutenant, and passed his orders on to her tribesmen, — about half the dwarfs sprang through the white men's line, and with their tomahawks pecked at the skulls of their wounded and dying enemies and enjoyed the sport, two or three of them dancing round a wounded man dodging his feeble efforts to use his javelin against them, and all the time taunting him, until a blow from behind finished him by splitting his skull.

It was horrible and sickening work, this massacring wounded men, but after all it was the kindest in the end, even if there was not the necessity to do it in self-defence; for the poor savages were wounded to the death by the poisoned
arrows, and killing them was thus really only shortening their agony. Thus the advance progressed steadily until within twenty paces of the diminished army of hesitating and frightened savages, when a halt was called, and in reply to the few and badly-aimed javelins which were cast at them, a last volley from every pistol, and a flight of arrows was poured in, and then, with a shout, swords were drawn, and the line rushed on. Few of the enemy except the wounded waited for the impact; they were fleeter of foot than the heavily-armed whites or their little allies, and perhaps a hundred, all that was left of the fine regiment, numbering nearly a thousand, that had started the fight only about two hours before, escaped into the forest, hotly pursued by the exultant dwarfs, who would hold them at a disadvantage and probably account for most of them before nightfall.

John Smith succeeded, with the girl’s help, in restraining about one hundred of the dwarfs from joining in the pursuit, and writing a short note to James Neccy describing the fight, he sent six of them back to the fort to let him know how they had fared. He could not as yet say how or when they would return, for they knew not what awaited them on the other side of the open ground. And so once more they went back over the battle-field, the dwarfs insulting their dead foes, assuring themselves that every man was dead and carefully picking up the spent arrows as they passed, until they got back to the place where their matchlocks were left. Here they rested for half-an-hour, and then buried their three dead comrades, deep enough to save them from the beaks and talons of the vultures, which were already hovering over the slain, and from the teeth of wild beasts, which would without doubt congregate as soon as night fell.

It was by this time the middle of the afternoon, and the
men were so tired that it seemed inadvisable to go on any further that day. They knew not whether more fighting awaited them when they got to the town, or whether they would find it deserted. All things taken into consideration, it was thought best to move up to the further edge of the plain and there bivouac for the night, as where they were there was no wood to make fires, nor water to drink, and they made out from the girl that there was a stream under the trees. The project was explained to the dwarfs, with the girl's assistance, and seemed to tally with their wishes; so the word was given march. But the dwarfs hung back, and the reason was soon explained: good food was lying out there on the plain waiting to be eaten, and already the vultures had commenced the feast. The white men had eaten once before the fight and had with them more food to satisfy their craving appetites: why should not their allies follow their own custom and feast on their dead enemies, as they had always been in the habit of doing? The girl plainly explained this to her master, who, when he understood her argument, could not refute it; but when he signed to her to go with her own people, she refused, and expressed disgust at the thought of the contemplated feast of her tribesmen. And so the two races parted company, the whites marching on towards their bivouac under the trees, and the dwarfs back to their cannibal feast, only the girl followed like a dog close at the heels of her master.

An hour's march brought them to the edge of the plain before nightfall, and there they found a broad but shallow stream, so that they were able to satisfy their thirst; and seeing no signs of an enemy, they decided to eat their meal on its banks.

On the other side of the river the country appeared more open, with clumps of trees and single trees in a plain of
short green grass, which the girl made them understand was the pasturage of the herds belonging to the big savages, whose town was not far off. They indulged in a refreshing wash in the clear water which made them ravenous for their food, and having dispatched this, they collected a quantity of firewood, which was plentiful enough, the prairie fire having scorched and dried up the trees on the edge of the plain. They carried the firewood back half a mile and prepared to bivouac in the open. It was their intention to start again before daylight, so dividing the night into three watches, one-third of the men kept guard whilst the remainder slept.

They slept in their harness, with their matchlocks and pistols loaded for fear of a surprise, but they were undisturbed except by the dwarfs, who came up in groups of twenty to fifty at a time all through the night, those who had pursued the enemy into the forest, as well as those who had remained with the white men, looking as if they were gorged to repletion as they passed the bivouac, to sleep beside the stream under the shadow of the trees.
CHAPTER IX.

Before sunrise the next morning the white men had finished their meal of manioc cakes and dried fish, and were ready for a start. The army of dwarfs were also ready waiting for their allies beside the stream, and in the dim misty morning light they all splashed through the shallow water. They marched for about two miles, through beautiful park-like lands, over luxuriant grassy turf and amongst scattered clumps of beautiful trees, many of them bearing fruits which the dwarfs collected and offered to their white friends; until at last they came within sight of what was evidently the savages' town — a large circular enclosure, roughly fenced with bushes and boughs of trees, probably between two or three miles in diameter. Over the fence could be seen the tops of the round, thatched huts of the natives, and in the centre what from the distance looked like a citadel, or perhaps the chief's house, enclosed with a higher fence of upright stakes and built on a little hill or mound.

It was uncertain what sort of a reception the conquering force would receive at the hands of the inhabitants, and every precaution was taken to avoid an ambush or surprise. And thus they advanced up to within half a mile of the enclosure and opposite to what appeared to be the entrance, when at last the inhabitants began to appear. Lewes halted his force to see what they meant to do, and every man had his gun ready and his match glowing. First an old
man came out of the gate, fantastically decked out like a Jack o'the green with a cloak made of grasses stained in different colours, and wearing on his head a huge bonnet made of the heads of what looked like some big sort of corn, with beautiful golden-coloured tassels waving in the wind and slung across his breast and back, like a sword-belt, a string of human skulls the end of which dragged on the ground, representing all that remained of over twenty men or women. He was a hideous specimen of humanity, and the dwarf girl clung to John Smith shuddering when she saw him, in fact the whole company of dwarfs showed fear of him. He carried in his right hand a very long-handled spear, having a broad and long blade which glittered in the sun like gold.

This hideous chief, or king, was followed out of the enclosure by about a hundred stalwart warriors, armed each with three or four javelins. These men drew up in a double line behind him, facing the invaders. When they were in position the old man began to chant a lugubrious sort of song, walking backwards and forwards the length of his line, and stopping every two or three yards to point with his spear at the white man who was then opposite him. All the time this was going on the dwarfs were cowering behind the soldiers with fear and even the latter began to think about enchantments and witchcraft, and to urge their leaders to give the word to fire; but they restrained them, thinking that perhaps this was a preliminary to surrender. After he had finished his song, and pointed his spear at about half the white men in the whole length of the line, the old man returned to the centre of his own array, and two fine-looking girls came from behind the line of warriors, where they had been concealed, and delivered something into his hands, taking from him at the same time his spear
and necklace of skulls. The old wizard then stepped forward to the middle of the space between the opposing forces, and commenced to wave his arms about, holding in either hand what looked like a long sword. As he waved, first slowly and then faster, a sort of rumbling noise came from him which gradually increased in intensity, until it became a roar of noise like angry bulls bellowing; and then the line of warriors advanced with a sort of hissing scream, which was too much for the dwarfs, who as soon as the old man began his antics had commenced to slink off further and further to the rear, showing every symptom of fright. The charge of the warriors was the signal for a headlong flight on their part, and the line of white men was left to bear the brunt of it. As soon as the savages got within range, Lewes gave the word to fire, and the threatened charge collapsed, only about ten of the fine line of men struggling forward, to be shot down by the pistols before they could cast a spear. The old wizard fell at the same time as if dead, which both of the leaders regretted, as they had ordered their men not to fire at him, hoping to take him alive. Then, after waiting to reload their pieces, the white men advanced again, and — for it seemed the kindest thing to do — passed their swords through those of the warriors who were not yet dead, except the old man, who, on being examined, proved to be unhurt and as well as ever. He was a very hideous old creature, when he was divested of all his finery and stood up naked for inspection. His body was scored all over with raised scars, and he compared very badly with the clean-limbed and well-favoured girls, his attendants, one of whom had been killed outright. The other, who had only been wounded by a pistol ball through the fleshy part of her right arm, was now led forward by a matchlockman in all the statuesque beauty of her naked-
ness, still clutching the long-handled spear the great blade
of which John Smith at once pronounced to be of pure gold. The wands which the old man had flourished, proved to be peculiarly curved slats of a whitish wood, pierced with several holes and very elastic. These, together with the spear, were given in charge of a sailor, while others were told off to guard the old man and the girl.

When the dwarf girl — who, true to her master, had not run off with her tribesmen — saw that the wizard had been stripped and rendered powerless, she went up to him, timidly at first, but soon gaining confidence, and began to jeer at him, pinching him and insulting him in many ways until her master was obliged to restrain her and order her off to call up her fellows, who had not retreated far. These coming up, were struck with wonderment at seeing the slaughtered enemy and the old savage wizard alive and a prisoner, for they evidently thought that he was invincible and certainly more of a god than a man, for they were, even now that he was a captive, almost afraid to approach him. But they showed no hesitation about advancing on the town, and would have rushed on in front of the white men if they had not been restrained. But this was not thought advisable by the leaders, as they were likely, in their excited state, to spare neither women nor children, if, as it seemed probable, the place was now undefended; so they ordered them to be kept back. But it was of no avail, for as soon as ever the white men had got through the opening in the hedge and entered the town, the dwarfs crowded after them, and scattering right and left amongst the huts, commenced to kill all they met, irrespective of age or sex, tearing down the frail walls of the huts and tomahawking every one who appeared.

There were many young men, fine stalwart-looking fel-
lows, amongst the women and children in the town, probably malingerers who had no stomach for fighting and sick men. At any rate there was no more resistance. The loss of their chiefs, and in fact all their soldiers, had completely cowed the rest, and before the white men had traversed half the distance up the open space between the gate of the town and the enclosure in the centre, more than a hundred women and children and a few men rushed up to them and implored their protection from the fury of the dwarfs. These fugitives were placed in the middle of the troop and the dwarfs driven back with as little force as possible, for they had been such good allies that no one wished to anger them.

But the white men saw that there was reason for their fury as soon as they got up to the fence of the inner enclosure, for there a horrible sight met their eyes. Right and left of the closed gate in the high palisade fence was a heap of butchered and fearfully mutilated bodies, all of the same race as the dwarfs. Festering in corruption, — at least the lower layers of the piles were — it looked as if for a month past two or three had been killed every day and cast on the heaps, for the bottom layers were almost unrecognisable as human beings. The flesh was rotting off the bones, whereas on the top of each heap lay bodies freshly killed and worst sight of all, on either side of the gate, securely tied to the palisades of the fence, appeared the bodies of two young dwarf girls, the trunks split open from the chin to below the navel, the viscera dragged out and hanging down to the ground. Is was a horrible sight, and one well calculated to raise the worst passions of the dwarf army, which now, finding itself in the role of a conquering force in a conquered town, could not be expected to conduct itself with moderation in the hour of its triumph,
and in the face of such evidence of the maltreatment of its kinsmen and kinswomen.

The chief fury of the little men seemed to be directed against the old wizard, now a captive; so at the instigation of the slave girl, and in order to divert their allies from a general slaughter of all the women and children in the place, as well as by way of meting out fair punishment to him for the cruelty which they did not doubt had been practised at his instigation, John Smith and Lewes decided to abandon him to the dwarfs and his fate. He was therefore passed over to them, to their intense gratification, and whilst they were deliberating as to the best way to deal with him, in order to make his death as distasteful to him, and in consequence as gratifying to themselves, as possible, the white men turned their attention to the citadel. They did not anticipate any resistance, nor did they experience any. When they broke in, the reason for this was obvious: there were no men there, only women.

The enclosure was circular, having a diameter of about a thousand hundred yards, and was divided by concentric rings of strong fencing into three circles. The outermost of these was divided into roomy stalls, in each of which was a fine cow, some with young calves by their sides. The next was occupied by a large herd of she goats; while the third and innermost was divided into small enclosures. These were the homes of the ladies of the harem of the chief, or chiefs, of the tribe. Each little patch was carefully planted with vegetables, fruit trees and even flowers; and at the back of each was a little hut, occupied by a cowering and frightened girl, who seemed as if she thought that death was the least evil which she could expect.

The adventurers entered the enclosure as they had the town itself, by the eastern gate, and followed a wide road,
which appeared to divide both the town and the citadel into two equal halves. Along the centre of this was led a fine canal of water, which gave off branches right and left, as well for the supply of the town as of the citadel. It was clean and limpid water until the centre of the citadel was reached, but thence it commenced to become contaminated, until it left the town as a sewer, carrying the filth from the place, which was not only inhabited by human beings, but was also crowded with cattle and goats.

The inner circle of women's huts enclosed an open space of some considerable size, with the stream running through the centre from east to west. The exact centre of the enclosure was occupied by a hideously-carved wooden figure, or idol, double-fronted, with one face looking to the north and one to the south. This figure was grotesque in the extreme and represented two men standing back to back, more than double life-size, each provided with a large and sharp bull's horn sticking out in front of him. These were evidently used as instruments of execution; for a woman of the tribe of the big savages was hanging impaled and dead on the north figure, when it was first discovered. This idol, or whatever it was, was enclosed by a fence made of many splendid elephants' tusks, planted points upwards in the ground, and having openings facing the four cardinal points of the compass, where the stream passed through from east to west under the double figure, which was erected over the water, and north and south, giving access to the idol, so that the first contamination of the stream should be caused by the decomposition of the victims immolated. The whole of this temple enclosure and the fence of elephants' tusks were covered in by a huge shed thatched with palm leaves: the ivory was not therefore damaged by the sun, and was of great value.
Outside the enclosure, on the north and south sides facing the idol, were built large beehive-shaped huts, apparently the official residences of the chief of the tribe who was killed in the battle on the plain, and of the old wizard. These huts also contained many fine elephants' tusks, but nothing else of value. Nowhere could the adventurers find any gold, nor could John Smith, by questioning the dwarf girl, understand that any of it was used by the people, the blade of the spear and one other weapon being the only gold which they found.

The women in the huts, nearly a hundred of them in all, were found to be in the full vigour of their youth, some with young babies and some without, but all appearing to be in a very healthy and clean condition, with smooth skins, rounded limbs, and generally a well-fed look about them; which was explained by the dwarf girl, who intimated that they lived on the milk of the cows and goats.

They were without exception as naked as they were born, without an ornament on their bodies of any sort, except that those living on the north side of the enclosure had two long horizontal scars on their foreheads, and those on the south side two vertical ones — seemingly the marks of the two different chiefs under whose protection they were living. It was afterwards found that every woman in the town bore either one or the other of these marks.

John Smith and Lewes came to the conclusion that the two chiefs of the tribe exercised between them some sort of "droit de seigneur"; and that their citadel with its garrison of women and cows and she-goats, and with its hideous idol in the midst, was actually a temple devoted to the worship of sex. This supposition was further confirmed by finding in sheds behind the chief's houses, four fine-looking bulls and as many hegoats. They found also graneries con-
taining several sorts of grain and manioc roots, besides large stores of dried plantains.

It was by now midday, and the time had arrived to decide upon what the next proceeding was to be. There was a great store not only of cattle and corn, but also of slaves and ivory, all ready to their hands and indisputably theirs by right of conquest. The question now was how to get their newly acquired wealth, or a fair proportion of it, down to the ships. The dwarfs were also fairly entitled to a large share of the spoils, not only from the fact that they had fought well and earned it, but also in compensation for the oppression under which the stronger race had held them. It was greatly feared that they might be prompted to revenge themselves on the captive women and children for the wrongs they had suffered, to which the climax had been put by their not finding any of their friends alive in the town, but, instead, only bodies scattered about in all directions. Evidently, before the savage army had marched out to fight in the plain, all the slaves had been put to death, either to terrorise the dwarfs, or as a measure of safety. The women in the citadel, and in fact the whole of the people left in the town, were now submissive enough, for they seemed only to expect death at the hands of the conquerors, and therefore awaited their fate stoically. Life had few charms for them apparently; nor was it strange that it should be so, for death was so constantly before them that it must have seemed merely an incident to be endured. The dwarfs had, apparently, for the time glutted themselves with revenge, by ruthlessly killing many of the unresisting inhabitants and, finally, the wizard chief, whom they had literally divided among them.

John Smith went with a guard of fifty matchlockmen to walk through the town, leaving the remainder with Lewes
to kill some cows and goats and cook a meal in the citadel. He first passed through a crowd of fugitive women and children, with not a few fine-looking, but unarmed, men amongst them, cowering at the gate. These great men he gathered from the slave girl were the "husbands" of the community. They were much finer-looking fellows than the soldiers: they were fed up and pampered, but not allowed to risk their lives fighting, for they were the aristocracy of the place and were, like all the women, marked on the forehead with either the horizontal or vertical lines; probably the two chiefs were chosen from their ranks.

Beyond the fugitives, he discovered the dwarfs very happily engaged round great fires in the broad eastern street, roasting large pieces of meat cut from several dead bullocks and goats, which they had slaughtered. They were apparently quite free from any sense of danger. As he passed by, they held up for his inspection small bits of bone which they wore tied round their necks, and which, he soon discovered, were all that remained of the wizard chief, who had been torn and worried to death, his flesh eaten by whoever could get at him to snatch a morsel, and his joints divided, the larger bones being cut into many short lengths, so that all should have a memento of the important victory.

John Smith and his company marched right round the town, keeping about equidistant between the citadel and the outer fences. He found a good many savages, mostly women and children, who were hiding in their huts.

The dwellings of the inhabitants were low beehive-shaped huts, thatched with grass or palm leaves, having low doorways through which it was necessary to crawl on hands and knees. All of them faced due east, and it was noticable that the eastern half of the town was much better looked after than the western, where the huts were smaller and more squalid.
There, also, the inhabitants were older men and women, and their gardens were ill-kept. It therefore appeared as if the whole population was graded, from the young and vigorous men and women and cattle and goats, living in the east; to the worn out and useless people in the west who gradually crawled to the edge of the stream and died at its point of exit from the town, to be carried out of the way by its waters with the rest of the pollution of the city.

Our sentimental hero has recorded some interesting thoughts of his own on the subject. He seemed to think that the arrangement had something to do with the worship of the sun. His imagination led him on to quite a long treatise about it. He considers the sun as the type of life for these poor savages, rising young and vigorous in the morning in the east, and battling through his day of storm and shadow, or sailing serenely through a cloudless sky, only to sink at last, defeated and worn out, to disappear in the west, to go through a nightly rest and preparation for another life the next day — a course typical of the life of the poor savages, ignorant in everything else but the fact of living and renewing themselves.

He imagines the girl child born, and passing her young life in the darkness and obscurity of an unheeded childhood, amongst the gardens and byways of the town, to be taken at the dawn of her woman's career to the high place in the temple of sex, there to undergo preparation for her journey through life; and thence one morning at sunrise, in the eastern gate of the city, full of hope and knowledge of herself, to be delivered into the hands of a husband, to fulfil with him her destiny in the scheme of the universe: then, after a period of active life, to drift with the sun slowly and surely to the west, where at last, like him, she dies and is lost, cast out of the City of Life to rottenness
and corruption, until, in the fullness of time, from rottenness and corruption a new incarnation of life and energy rises like a Phoenix, and spreads its wings in another phase of vitality — disunited atoms from the waste heap of decomposition far in the west, which, after many cycles of change and travel, unite again in the east to evolve the newborn life of the babe, and like the Sun, again to rise to Life, and Light, and Power.
CHAPTER X.

They decided that it was better to spend another night in the town, as it was too late to make the return journey to the fort, and the dwarfs certainly were not in a fit state to travel, for they had gorged themselves with meat, and were sleeping as happily in the midst of their foes, as if the latter were all dead. But there still remained more than a hundred of the great men, to say nothing of women, and these might well be expected to feel revengeful for the loss of most of the manhood of their tribe.

The adventurers were astonished beyond measure at the indifference to danger displayed by their allies, until on a closer examination they discovered that, although the bulk of the dwarfs were sleeping on the ground, in the middle of the broad east road of the town, there was a row of watchful sentries posted just off the road on either side in the gardens, and that every sleeper grasped in his hand his little bow and bundle of arrows, ready to spring at once to the alert if the alarm were given.

Their own men had eaten a hearty meal in the citadel, and had refreshed themselves with copious draughts of fresh and warm milk, they therefore proceeded to pick out about a hundred of the finest and strongest of the men, who, with the women, crowded round the gate of the citadel, and thrust them inside the gate by force, for they showed great reluctance to enter this, to them, apparently forbidden place.
Having got them to the central open space around the sanctuary of the idol, they made them sit down in rows of ten, and tied them together to long cords by halters passed round their necks. A large supply of this cordage was found in the chiefs' huts: it had been used, most likely, by the big savages to secure their own slaves. They also tied each man's legs together at the ankles for better security, and then supplied them with the remains of their own meal of cow's meat and milk; but they took no trouble to secure the women of the citadel, who squatted about in their gardens, stupidly watching the proceedings.

They then selected fifty of the finest of the elephants' tusks, filled fifty mat bags with the Indian corn and other grain, and deposited either a tusk or a bag of corn beside each bound man, ready for an early start in the morning. They also intended to claim the assistance of the dwarfs to drive along a herd of cattle and goats, and if possible to make some of the strongest of the women carry loads with them down to the fort; for they saw no reason why they should not keep some of the men, at least, as slaves, as they would do excellently to work the oars of the PETER ASMODEUS, and each of the galleons could also take a few of them to do the dirty work of the ships.

Having thus made everything ready for an early start, they, as on the night before, divided their force into three groups, so that one-third should be on guard whilst the other two-thirds slept, in the open space between the centre and the eastern gate. They kept large fires alight all night, as much to overpower the horrible stench of the place and drive away the persistent and venomous gnats, as to shed light on the surroundings so that they might quickly detect any suspicious movement. And thus they rested in the citadel of their conquered foes until daybreak of the next day.
In the early dawn the sentries observed the savage women creeping out of their huts, and at once informed Lewes, so that if any treachery was contemplated they might be prepared; but as it did not look as if any harm was intended, the two leaders contented themselves with watching the proceedings, and ordering the whole force to be awakened to prepare a meal, by cooking the meat of two cows which had been slaughtered the night before.

They were much interested in watching the women's proceedings: first, they all assembled inside the elephants' tusk fence in two companies, facing the double-fronted idol, before which they performed a sort of slow-paced dance, not altogether modest. They then trooped down to the stream on the east side of the idol and washed their bodies carefully, which finished, they all returned to their huts, fetched each of them a large empty calabash, and going amongst the goats and cows, quickly milked them, and brought their calabashes back on their heads, each company to the front of either the war chief's or the wizard's hut respectively. They there arranged the vessels of milk in a semi-circle on the ground, facing the hut to which each company belonged, and standing behind their calabashes, they attentively watched for the rising of the sun, which, after about a quarter of an hour, commenced to show his disc over the horizon. At this signal the women began to chant what seemed to be a morning hymn, and continued the singing, which was quite melodious, until the sun was well above the horizon. The women then turned their faces to the doors of the huts and uttered a shrill shout, undoubtedly with the intention of awakening the two great chiefs.

Having thus finished their morning salutation, each woman sat down on the ground behind her calabash, apparently awaiting the appearance of the chiefs. But no chiefs came
forth, for they had already received and answered a sterner summons, and gone down the stream towards the west and the setting sun, to add their measure to the grist for the ever-creating powers of Nature. Of this fact the women were only to surely aware, as they were also of the duty which devolved on them in such an emergency; for with one accord, as if by pre-conceived arrangement, they came in two bodies round to the east side of the elephants' tusk enclosure, where, as it chanced, John Smith and Lewes were standing to watch their proceedings, on either side of the stream, and by unmistakable gestures invited the white chiefs to pass on with them and enter the chiefs' houses.

"To the victors the spoils." Thus were John Smith, the trader, and Lewes de Havre, the captain of the ordnance, proclaimed Priest, or Wizard, and Warchief respectively of this war-like tribe; albeit it was now depleted of its army and consisted mainly of women, and what they facetiously named the "husbands" of the tribe. There was no doubt of the intention, nor did the white men for a moment think that the remnant of the tribe would fail to acknowledge their new chiefs; for even the dwarf slave girl acknowledged the fact in her own way, by grovelling at her masters feet and licking his boots, and then, as if recollecting that her own people had an interest in the instalment of the new chiefs, she ran to the gate of the citadel, and vehemently harangued her tribesmen, until they ceased from their occupation of devouring half-raw bullock meat, and at her invitation, crowded into the citadel, which before they had been afraid to enter. They arrived in front of the image just in time to see the last act of the installation and elevation of the two white captains to supreme power. Two thrones were brought out of the kings' houses by the women, these thrones were beautifully constructed of ivory
cunningly carved and joined together. They were set in front of the two chiefs’ huts, and the two white chiefs were induced to sit in them; the goldbladed spear was placed in John Smith’s hands, and a staff with a knob of solid gold, as big as a man’s two fists, which was brought out of the warchief’s hut by the women, in the hands of Lewes de Havre.

Behold, now, the two kings seated on their thrones before the doors of their palaces and receiving the too affectionate homage of the ladies of their court! The sight raised the mirth of the stalwart matchlockmen, who could only see the amusing side of the matter; so they fell to congratulating their captains on their wholesale marriage. But John Smith excuses himself and his friend from the slur of being parties to such frivolity: albeit he admits that the ladies, except for their faces, which did not fulfil his ideal of beauty, were perfect as to form, with skins of satin, and limbs only comparable to those of the fabled Venus. He argues that by allowing themselves to be made chiefs of the tribe, they not only became heirs to the wealth of the former chiefs in ivory and cattle, to say nothing of the valuable insignia of royalty, represented by the ivory thrones and gold-headed spear and club, besides many other articles of value which they found in the huts; but they also inherited supreme power in the tribe, and it no longer mattered about making slaves of a few of them by force, because the whole tribe was at their mercy, absolutely, for life or death, to do with as they pleased.

The installation had taken but a very short time, and it only now remained for the new kings to be introduced to the tribe. This was soon done. Four stalwart girls lifted each throne shoulder high, and bore their masters to the eastern gate of the citadel. Here all that were left of the
tribe were called together by a peculiar shout from the women of the citadel; and when they were assembled, the two new kings were anointed with milk from the breasts of two of the ladies; the lady who anointed John Smith being chosen from the ranks of Lewes' entourage, and Lewes being in like manner anointed by a lady from the other side.

This interesting ceremony being finished, all the people of the tribe of big savages, and also the dwarfs, did homage by throwing themselves flat on the ground and grovelling with their faces in the dust, at the same time raising a chorus of salutation.

Now they were indeed kings, duly nominated by the ladies who were the custodians of the royal insignia and crown property, enthroned, presented to the people, anointed and accepted by popular acclamation, not only by the tribe of their former enemies, but also by the dwarfs, who it appeared, acknowledged to some extent the sovereignty of their bigger neighbours, and whose late acts of hostility were therefore more in the nature of a rebellion, than a war between independent tribes.

The two white chiefs were conducted back to their respective huts, and it was apparently expected that they would pass the rest of the day in some orthodox way proper to the occasion, perhaps by the sacrifice of victims, or by a feast, which would certainly be on the usual lines of all feasts of the anthropophagi.

But this was not their intention; they had done all they wished to do in conquering the tribe; the rest was quite outside the programme of their wishes. Even the honour of kingship which had been thrust upon them was irksome, and was considered by them a waste of time. They were only anxious to get back to the ships as soon as possible
and with as large a quantity of booty as they could manage to take; so their first act had the significance of clemency properly observable on such an occasion. They ordered the hundred or more „husbands” of the tribe to be released from their bonds.

They then prepared for departure. First they loaded the „husbands” each with a selected elephant’s tusk or a bag of corn, and marched them out of the citadel, leaving them outside under charge of ten matchlockmen; then, collecting about another hundred men and half grown lads, they loaded them also, but with lighter tusks. They then called in the dwarfs and commenced to collect the cows and goats with the intention of driving them out of the citadel, but they found great trouble in accomplishing this, as neither the dwarfs nor the white men could manage them at all; but on a hint from the dwarf girl they at last got out of the difficulty by ordering the women of the citadel to move them. They found that each woman had a certain number under her charge, and that these followed her without any hesitation.

They had now a very considerable and valuable booty. The thrones, gold-headed spear and club and the other royal appurtenances were not, of course, left behind, but were given in charge of the proper custodians, and the march was then commenced.

First, half the matchlockmen went on under Lewes as an advance guard; then the „husbands” and other carriers with the ivory and grain, followed by the women with the cattle and goats; and then a rear-guard of matchlockmen under John Smith. The dwarfs were divided into two bodies and marched on either side. It was quite nine o’clock in the morning before the start was made, and they did not arrive at their destination before nightfall, although the
distance was certainly not over fifteen miles; but a great deal of delay was caused in getting the cattle and goats over the swamp.

The two gallant Captains were very much joked about their new dignity and their many wives, but the Admiral was very well pleased with the ivory, and immediately decided that he would keep about thirty of the "husbands" and train them to work the oars of the PETER ASMODEUS, as well as to do the dirty work of the two galleons. The cattle, goats, and corn were especially welcome, and it was immediately resolved to replenish all the salt meat casks so far as the stock of salt would allow, and also to dry a lot of the meat in the sun and over fires.

At a general conference held during the evening, they decided to make another excursion up to the town and bring down more cattle and ivory, but that the next day should be given up to rejoicing, feasting, and making much of their allies, the dwarfs, without whose assistance they would certainly not have succeeded so well in the fight with the big savages.
CHAPTER XI.

The tribes made no difficulty at all in arranging their camps for the night. The women, as soon as they arrived in the open ground around the fort, immediately started to milk the cows and goats, filling the calabashes they had brought with them, and in proper order advancing in two groups to present the milk to their newly-appointed chiefs, and then, when it had been divided amongst the seamen, to whom, as may be imagined it was a great treat, herding their cows and goats in a great circle around them, with a broad lane through the centre leading east and west. When this was finished they commenced to build two huts for their chiefs in the midst, with material which their tribesmen — except the "husbands" — brought from the forest; the "husbands" in the meantime, after having been made to deposit their loads in the fort, arranging themselves in a ring on the outside of the cattle, to guard the herd and keep them from straying.

The dwarfs, true to their instincts, after getting their share of cow and goat meat took to the forest, all except the slave girl, who would not leave her master.

Soon the camp and fort were quiet, and except for the sentries, all were asleep. The two new kings of the savage tribes were constrained by the women to spend the night in the huts prepared for them. It seemed better for them to exhibit perfect trust in the honesty of their people, but they took the precaution to both occupy the same hut and
the dwarf girl, who was at first very jealously regarded by the other ladies, insisted on sharing the hut with them. She seemed to have no fear of treachery on the part of the remnant of the tribe of big savages, for, as she very explicitly explained, the "husbands" were only like women and could not fight, and the women, who were now the most important members of the tribe remaining, had of their own free will accepted the white men as chiefs, and would certainly protect them. Moreover, she proudly pointed to the forest, where her own people — who now held the mastership of the country — had retired to guard the whole community.

John Smith wrote a long and very interesting disquisition on the manners and customs of these two peculiar tribes; he observed their habits very carefully, and after the fleet left the coast, carrying with it some of them as slaves, together with the dwarf girl, he diligently learned both languages, which were used interchangeably by the tribes, and got to understand very well their system of government and ethics.

Both tribes were cannibals, eating their slain enemies, as well as those of their own tribes who were convicted of any crime. The dwarfs were of a much lower type of humanity than the others, having no fixed towns or villages, but camping in the forest, some times for a few weeks together in the same place, in groups of a few families; but generally they moved about from place to place every day. They appeared to have no religious belief at all, but they acknowledged the bigger race of men as their masters, not willingly, but because they could not help it, and they took every opportunity to injure them when they could do so with impunity, slyly killing and eating them whenever they could in the depths of the forest, but making no attempt to keep them as slaves.
They had no laws of marriage or divorce, merely mating and separating like animals, nor did they seem to have any kings or chiefs. The mothers of children were the only members of the community who exercised any sway or governance, and that sway was exercised only over their own children until they were old enough to fend for themselves. True, there were far in the depths of the forest old men and women, of whom the slave girl spoke with great reverence, who prepared the poison for their arrows and also the antidote; but these wise men and women held no real power over the tribe; they merely worked for pay; and sometimes gave advice on matters relating to the welfare of the tribe.

Not so the other race, a much higher grade of thought was theirs. John Smith records it as his conviction that their system of ethics, simple and plainly discernible as it was in the life of the people, was a good system, and one well adapted to the requirements of such a people in such a country, and even perhaps worthy of imitation by more civilised races. It was, as he understood it, the practical worship of the race, for the good of the race, by the race itself. The sun as the origin of light and heat was honoured as the first principle of fertilization; and sex, not only in the abstract, was worshipped as the regenerator and powerful friend of the tribe, to forward its power and greatness by increase, and in the right direction of strong and healthy progeny, not only of its men and women, but of its flocks and herds also. In furtherance of this object, the selection of the fittest subjects for the continuance of the tribe was entrusted to two chiefs; one, a strong man in the fight, because such strength was necessary to enforce their mandates; and the other a cunning man of parts, skilled in physiology.
A reasonable, and, says the observer in his record of it, not an unworthy cult, even though he ascertained that such drastic measures as the slaying of mal-formed children and sickly persons and animals, and the mating of men and women with or without their consent, as well as the severance of already mated couples, were within the arbitrary powers of the chiefs. He does not even condemn the savage execution of the poor woman found impaled on the idol, but finds a fair and good reason for it; nor can he cease to admire a system, which, as he says, was the cause of the laying out of a town on such good principles, for the maintainence of health and cleanliness, that it would put to the blush many towns known to him in Europe; nor yet did he for a moment regret that he had restrained the religious fervour of some of his men, which would have led them to demolish the hideous double-fronted idol. He was glad to leave it as a monument of a savage cult, which was, even if savage, perhaps able to teach a lesson to civilization; and it would also serve as a rallying point about which the tribe might re-assemble and continue its life after they themselves had left the country.

The day after they returned from the expedition was given up to rest and feasting, as well as to a great distribution of presents to the dwarfs, who were each given either a strip of coloured cloth, or some beads or other finery, and with these gifts they were much delighted. The heroic little slave girl was dressed up in resplendent colours, and proudly marched about behind her master, carrying his gold-bladed spear. The "husbands" and the other men of the big race of savages were constrained to build rough shelters for the cattle women, and to make a yard for the cattle. The herd was tended by the women and allowed to graze the herbage in the clearing.
A small quantity of the spirit which had been distilled from manioc was also given to the people of both tribes, but was not much appreciated by the dwarfs, who were during the afternoon joined by many of their women; and very fascinating little ladies some of them were, with bright intelligent eyes, sharp as needles, light tan-coloured skins, and well-proportioned limbs and bodies. Lewes de Havre was quite pleased when John Smith's slave led up to him a pretty little girl, and giving into her charge his knobbed stick of office, installed her as his mace-bearer.

The big savages had had their day, they were no longer masters of the district, but would now have to submit to the over-lordship of the dwarfs, and John Smith trembled for the future of their comparatively advanced state of civilization. Many of the sailors looked upon the cattle women and saw that they were fine healthy creatures, but James Neccy promptly suppressed any improper interference with them as likely to cause trouble, and he decided that both the women and their flocks and herds had better go back to their own place, and that cattle other than this herd of mothers should be brought down for the requirements of his ships.

The next day, therefore, a hundred men escorted the ladies and their charges back to the town, leaving fifty of the "husbands" only at the fort as hostages, and to finish the yard and camp for a supply of cattle, of a different and less particular description.

James Neccy himself went up with this second expedition, leaving Lewes de Havre behind in charge of the fort. All the remainder of the savages were taken back to bring down the cattle and goats in exchange for the cows, and also more ivory. The dwarf army without being ordered, fell into their usual position on either side of the cavalcade.
John Smith and his faithful slave went up with them, as he was the only person in the company who had learned enough of the language to make himself understood. It was their intention to spend two or three nights at the town, in order to thoroughly search it and bring away anything of value that might have been overlooked on the first visit.

They had a very successful journey, and having replaced the ladies, and their cows and goats, in their proper habitations, they proceeded to collect a large herd of cattle and goats from the outer town, and to ransack the place for other treasures; but except ivory, of which they procured a goodly store, nothing of importance was found; so after two nights rest in the town they returned to the river with their booty.

It was now the middle of September, and the Admiral was anxious to get away and continue his journey eastwards. His shipwrights had finished patching up the JOHANIS and she was ready for re-launching. It only remained now to re-victual the ships, by drying and salting a lot of the beef and goat mutton, and getting on board the grain and the ivory. They reckoned that another week would suffice for this, so that they would be able to leave before the rainy season started in October.

They had up to this time lost altogether eleven men; four were killed or died of their wounds during the fight with the carrack; two were killed in the battle with the big savages, and five others had died of disease during their stay on the river. They proposed to take away with them twenty-five of the "husbands", fifteen for the PETER ASMODEUS as galley slaves, to work the oars and lodge in the oar-deck, and five each on the other ships. To wait on these men and prepare their food they also shipped five women on the crompster, and two each on the galleons, so that their
ships' companies were more than made up; and to the
great contentment of the sailors, there would no longer be
any necessity for them to work the oars, a job which was
particularly distasteful to them, associated as it was with
the degradation which no free man would willingly accept.

Galleys and the use of oars in the propulsion of ships
were fast going out of fashion. The Italian Spinola had
tried to revive it, and did in fact man a fleet of six galleys
to assist the Spaniards; but when they were cut to pieces
a few years after by the English and Dutch, as they attempt-
ted to enter the mouth of the Thames, they disappeared for
ever from naval warfare, and oars on other ships soon
followed suit. James Neccy, however, found the PETER
ASMODEUS very useful in this expedition when in shallow
waters, and also in the open sea, by reason of her ability
to stop an enemy from getting the weather gauge, and by
keeping herself out of the range of guns which could not
respond effectively to the fire of her long swivel gun, which
was the forerunner of the famous long guns of the buccaneers
and the latter pirates.

For the next week the river bank was a scene of great
activity. The JOHANIS, having been warped out into deep
water, was reloaded with the material which had been taken
out to lighten her; her guns were reshipped, the ivory
stowed away in the holds of all three vessels, and the grain
and meat disposed of while accommodation was also found
for ten live cows and as many goats. Quarters were also
prepared for the slaves. These latter seemed to accept their
fate quite cheerfully; and when the preparations going
forward made it obvious to the dwarfs that the white men
intended leaving, many of them came forward, and through
the medium of the slave girl, offered to go too, but John
Smith took great pains to point out to them the dangers
of the voyage and the great uncertainty of their ever seeing their native land again, if they did go; so they reluctantly agreed to stay behind. But by no means could he persuade his own dwarf girl, or the girl who had attached herself to Lewes to follow their example: they both insisted strenuously on accompanying their masters; and when it was evident that, if if they were not allowed to do so, they would certainly kill themselves, it was proposed that they should, each of them, choose a husband to go with them from the men who had wished to embark; but this idea they laughed to scorn, intimating very plainly that they would have no other husbands than their own masters; and truly, so good and faithful had one of them proved herself to be, that her master could not find it in his heart to deny her. The girls were therefore, to their great delight, duly entered on the ship’s books as „Meseh, slave of John Smith” and „Meleh, slave of Lewes de Havre”, names which were understood to apply to them and by which they were always after known.

It was a sorrowful day for the dwarfs when the great ships unmoored and began to drop down the river with the tide. They had been told the day before that the white men were going to leave them, and had been given a great feast with some of the fire-water, as they had learned to call it, and had also been given presents of bright-coloured cloth and beads. In return they had brought in many beautiful birds and some apes, besides a large supply of the poison antidote, which John Smith had been very anxious to procure, as he was sure that it would be a useful medicine for snake bite, as well as a protection against poisoned arrows. At his suggestion, also, four more of the stones which he believed to be diamonds had been found in the hands, or rather “breast pockets” of as many
old ladies, who apparently looked upon them as charms. And so they drifted down the river, the Peter Asmodeus leading the way, and for the first two days many of the dwarfs followed down the river banks, for they were loath to lose sight of their friends, who, they recognised, had conferred on them a lasting obligation, by breaking the power of their sometime masters and reversing the old order of things. It was to be hoped that they would use their newly-acquired preponderance of strength leniently, and would not destroy the particularly well laid out town, or ruthless stamp out the system whereby the finer race had certainly raised the standard of the physique of their tribe.

James Neccy and his captains were well contented with the results of the voyage so far. They had seriously damaged, if not utterly destroyed, a carrack belonging to the enemy, certainly it might have been better if they had taken it and transferred the richest part of its cargo to their own ships, they would not have troubled about the pepper. They had established friendly relations with an Important tribe on a fine river, a fact which might be useful in the future; and they had acquired over four hundred fine tusks of ivory, besides a lot of slaves who would in time relieve the crews of much arduous and disagreeable work. The eight months which had elapsed since they had started had not on the whole been ill spent, and if they could slip away from this coast without encountering enemies' ships with metal too heavy for them, they would be well content.

In four days they reached the mouth of the river, where they had to wait over a week for a favourable tide to take them over the bar and out to sea. It was their hope to beat out to the island of Ascension, in order to catch the prevailing wind from the north-west, and slant down with it to round the dangerous Cabo Tormentoso, or as it had
been re-named, the Cape of Good Hopes. They were very successful in this, and also in making a harbour on the other side of the cape known to old Chiristian Lentholm, where he had once before called for water and made friends with the natives. Here they obtained some cattle and water by barter, as well as some ostrich feathers and ivory; but after a stay of two weeks for refreshment, they again got their anchor up and shaped a course for Ceylon. But before they got near the island they had had a brush with two Portuguese ships; one, the Peter Asmodeus sank before she could get her guns into action, while the other hauled down her flag and surrendered at discretion, being quite unable to cope with such long odds. The Admiral, in consideration of her having surrendered, merely relieved her of all her powder, cannon balls and small arms, and thus helpless allowed her to make the best of her way to some friendly port. Being a ship of war — she was a small galleon, which, together with her consort, had formed part of a fleet destined for an expedition to the Red sea, but which had been shattered and driven out of its course by bad weather — she had only a small amount of money on board, or at any rate only a small sum was produced, even in answer to pretty severe threats. This sum was of course confiscated.

On the east coast of Ceylon they found all they required for refreshment, and also secured some pearls from the natives, who quickly understood that they did not belong to the same nation as the hated Portuguese, who were at this time making themselves very objectionable in the island; for the zeal of the priests in proselytizing had reached the limit of endurance, and more. Indeed, a year after, owing to a letter sent home by James Neccy, Admiral Spilberg sought an alliance with the King of Kandy, which did not,
however, bear fruit until the year 1638, when the Dutch finally turned the Portuguese out of the island.

From Ceylon they shaped a course for the northern most point of Sumatra, intending to call at Achi, where five years before John Smith had landed with Christian Lentholm, and where they hoped, in spite of the intrigues and hostility of the Arab merchants, to secure some pepper for the Chinese traders, whom they expected to meet at Johor, or on the east coast of the Peninsula. They hoped also to get a good rest at Achi, and to be able to prepare themselves for the dangerous passage down the narrow sea between the Peninsula and Sumatra by overhauling their armament and practising their men with their weapons.

Their slaves had by this time got used to the sea. The "husbands" had been carefully trained to the oars on board the Peter Asmodeus, and had developed into fine strong men, very different from the soft, fat and indolent creatures who were pampered and fed up in their native town, and whose only use in the community was to assist in increasing the numerical strength of the tribe. Two of the men and one of the women had died on board, apparently from sea-sickness, with which they were terribly afflicted; in fact for the first month after leaving Dongo it was thought that many of them would succumb, and the white sailors got quite tired of attending to them and keeping them and their quarters clean; for if left to their own devices they would have wallowed in filth, until probably they would not only have died of disease themselves, but the Peter Asmodeus would have become no better than a pig-stye. Old Paul Keyut, her commander, however, very soon took measures to obviate that. Twice a day he had the deck in the waist — where they worked and slept and in fact lived, except when they were allowed on the upper deck.
for exercise — thoroughly washed out, by casting buckets of water on to the savages as they sat or lay about the floor. It was an heroic cure for sea-sickness, as well as for uncleanliness, but it was effective; and after a time, when they got used to it, the savages enjoyed going through the performance themselves, half of them working the buckets, whilst the other half scrubbed the deck, the women enjoying the fun as well as the men. By the Admiral’s orders the marital arrangements of these people were to be left entirely in their own hands. The women were given a galley and a cabin adjoining the open space where the oar-benches were, and here they prepared the food for themselves and the men. The only thing that James Neccy insisted on was that none of the white men were to interfere with them, but events afterwards proved that this order was not very implicitly obeyed. The small parties of savages in the galleons were treated in the same way.

Meseh and Meleh, the dwarf girls, were rather better treated, and after they got over their sea-sickness became very happy indeed. They were given a small cabin which had been used by two servants of the poop, and they soon did the work of looking after their masters’ rooms and furniture, thus relieving a man, who was only too pleased to exchange his work of a menial for that of a mariner. They were affectionate little creatures, and soon became great pets of the whole ship’s company, so far as they were allowed, for they were restricted to the after part of the ship, and were not allowed to go amongst the men. They were given proper women’s clothes to wear, instead of the short breeches and smocks in which the other savage women, as well as the men, were dressed; and it was most amusing to see the airs and graces with which they also clothed themselves. Their masters assiduously taught them each his
own language, which was also most amusing to everybody, as after carefully learning a little lesson they would essay to parade their knowledge, and thus fall into mistakes and disputes which created much enjoyment, not only to themselves, but to the Admiral and his officers. The final triumph was, however, attained when Lewes, who was an accomplished gallant, taught them to dance a saraband, which they soon did very cleverly, Meseh being dressed up as a gallant in a special suit made for her by the tailor, and Meleh as his lady. It was very pretty to see them, after they had finished their dance, run to their masters like two children who had done a lesson well, to be petted and fondled. They soon became, when the weather was fine, the regular entertainers of the company in the Admiral's saloon.

The adventurers were not very successful at Achi, for as soon as they arrived they found that the country was hostile to them, and a crowd of prahus came round the ships. The Shah Bandar, or Captain of the port, a most dignified old person, who was received on board with all the honours due to him, and who was most polite when receiving the present which was offered, at first held out hopes that they would be allowed to land; but after keeping them waiting for four days and letting it be seen that several of his officers would like presents as well, at last tired their patience out, and on being asked bluntly if the King would receive a deputation and a rich present, intimated that the King never left his palace, nor would he allow any men to enter it: it was against the law for him to do so; but "at the same time, if the white men wished to send him a present, he, the Shah Bandar, would be pleased to take charge of it, and perhaps the King might be so condescending as to speak to them through the gate."
But James Neccy got impatient, and having secured some fresh fish and vegetables from the numerous boats which hung about, would not trouble to wait longer for the remote chance of a few bags of pepper, although he saw the Arab merchants loading their ships every day. He therefore weighed anchor suddenly before dawn one morning, and had disappeared before the Achinese were about.

But they were not to be left off so easily. The Achinese were a strong, warlike people, and had imbibed a very deep and fanatical faith in the teaching of the Arab priests, who came with the traders for pepper, and meant, if possible, to keep the white men out of their country.
CHAPTER XII.

The two galleons and the crompster had got up their anchors and taken advantage of a favourable breeze to stand in for the Straits, intending to hug the coast of Sumatra in preference to the other side, in order to avoid the many Portuguese ships which were always to be met with, travelling up or down the other coast from Pegu to Malacca, or from Malacca across to Goa. James Neccy did not consider himself strong enough to encounter the Portuguese power in the narrow seas. He well knew that, if he did chance to meet a weaker squadron, the probability was that, before he had captured or sunk it and got past Malacca to the friendly port of Johor, he would have to pay dearly for his temerity; because at Malacca there were always some Portuguese great ships lying, besides several galleys, which would sally out after him. He preferred to avoid an encounter rather than to court it. But in endeavouring to avoid Scylla he fell into Charybdis. He had not long left his anchorage and, following the Sumatran coast with light breezes, proceeded on his voyage, before he noticed three large prahuş working out to windward of him. There was nothing extra-ordinary about this, for Malay prahuş, and even Chinese junks, were fairly common in these seas, but they were not looked upon as pleasant neighbours, for it was well known that, if opportunity occurred, they were neither more nor less than sea-robbers. But they were also timid, and would think
twice before they attacked so strong a force as was represented by the two galleons and the crompster, so that the Admiral did not feel any alarm, at least not until late in the afternoon. Then he began to think that some agency hostile to him was at work, for all through the day, at intervals of an hour or so, he noticed these craft stealing quietly away from the Sumatran coast in twos or threes, from the mouths of streams, and from white stretches of sand, sometimes seeming to simply detach themselves from the apparently unbroken line of the mangrove swamp, but always tacking across his course either before or behind him, and when they had got to windward some little distance, altering their course so as to keep parallel with the fleet. By four o'clock in the afternoon there were over twenty of these craft sailing along on the same course as the Dutch ships, and only separated from them by about a mile interval.

It had a very suspicious look, and certainly seemed as if the Malays had, for purposes of their own, taken, and meant to keep, the weather gage, a proceeding which was almost equal to a challenge, in that it was a menace to the fleet to the leeward; and only in this light could James Neccy and his captains look upon it.

Of course there was the possibility that this fleet of prahus had some other object in sailing down the narrow sea between Sumatra and Malacca and knowing — as all the Malay kings, did by this time know — that the Dutch were at enmity with the Portugals, they perhaps wished to take advantage of the convoy offered by three well-armed Dutch ships to get past the Portuguese stronghold and fort at Malacca; but to believe this it was also necessary to credit the Malays with the excessive politeness of assuming the post of danger between the Dutch ships and the course always
taken by those of the Portugése, which was along the eastern half of the Straits, as close as was safe to the coast of the Peninsula. It was difficult to believe this, for it meant a very considerable alteration in the known habits of the astute sea-faring Malays, and neither old Christian Lentholm nor John Smith would accept this theory. It only remained then to look upon the Malay fleet as hostile; and the three Dutch ships, which had drawn close together in order to confer on the matter, were quickly prepared for action, for it was decided that if a fight was to take place, it would be better to start it at once, so as to get it over if possible before dark, and also before more prahus came out from the Sumatran coast to make the odds too heavy. Already there were twenty prahus to windward, each probably holding twenty fighting Malays.

The Malay tactics of naval warfare were well known to several members of the expedition who had travelled in these seas before, especially the captain of the Admiral's ship. They never attacked until they had an overwhelming superiority in numbers, and then they bore down on their prey — generally a single trading ship of small size — in the night, and captured her by boarding, perhaps without even firing a shot from their lelas, or little cannons, until they were close aboard; for their biggest guns were very feeble, none of them carrying a ball over a pound in weight; indeed, the clumsy brass blunderbusses, which they had fixed to the sides of their prahus, were the more dangerous weapons; as they were heavily charged with all sorts of rough bits of iron, tin bullets, and even pebbles, which did much damage at close quarters. Their habit was to get as close to their prey as possible, and then, with much shouting and a great display of fury, to fire one round from all their fire-arms and climb on board, when their reckless
disregard of life and overwhelming numbers generally made them irresistible.

In order to make certain of their intentions, the Peter Asmodeus got out her oars and beat up against the wind towards the prahus, the galleons at the same time slanting out from the Sumatran coast as much as they were able without tacking. This proceeding evidently took the Achinese by surprise, for they quickly clustered together, and as the Peter Asmodeus got up to within half a mile of them, it was plain also that they were prepared for action, for they could be seen clustered round their lelas with lighted linstocks.

Old Paul Keyut stole a little closer, and then steadying his ship, enabled Rupert Saville, the master gunner in charge of the long gun "Anna", to send a ball into the midst of the clump of prahus—a proceeding which evidently caused great consternation, for they had never before been shot at with such heavy metal and at such long range. The crompster was able to keep her position and get in another shot before the Achinese recovered from their fright, but then they came down on her, at least those which could do so, for two large prahus were so disabled that they could not join in the movement and seemed in danger of sinking.

The two galleons had in the meantime forged ahead on their slant out from the Sumatran coast, whence several other craft could be seen straining out to join their friends; and unless the Peter Asmodeus could join her consorts before the prahus reached her, her situation was certainly grave. Old Paul Keyut would not, however, hurry himself, trusting to his savage oarsmen to make as good, if not better speed than the prahus, the savages were now so well used to their work and were so well trusted, that they
were no longer chained to their benches, as was customary with galley slaves. He quietly put his ship about, and the great gun "Anna" was slued round on her pivot until she pointed astern, in the hopes of getting in another shot before the prahu got close enough for the culverins in the stern castle to come into action; and thus, well maintaining his distance, he steered a course to meet the galleons, which were gradually forging out to sea and drawing after them the prahu from the Sumatran coast; for they also saw that the fight had commenced, and tried all they could to get out in time to join in.

Rupert Saville got in two more shots from the "Anna" before the crompster joined company with the galleons, but one, owing to the unsteady motion of the ship was a miss, while the other stopped a prahu; so that of the fleet from the outside only seventeen were now coming up; but from the coast three more would arrive at the same time, with six more coming on at intervals afterwards — quite a formidable enough company to deal with, especially as night was fast approaching.

The most important thing was to stop the Malays from boarding if possible, as their superior numbers and recklessness would certainly make them dangerous if once they gained a footing on deck. The Admiral, therefore, ordered the same course to be maintained, in order to draw the prahu farther and farther away from the coast, and to keep up a running fight with the culverins in the stern castles of the ships as long as possible. In this way four more prahu were sunk or disabled, but the rest kept gaining ground. The crompster could have easily got away from them, but it was inevitable that the galleons should be caught; and it was now nearly dark. There seemed no chance but that it would come to a hand-to-hand struggle on the
decks of the ships, and the prospect was not relished by the Admiral, who, well as he could trust his men, knew that they were at a great dis-advantage in numbers, and also in fighting in the dark against such reckless and fanatical foes as the men of Achi were. Besides their piratical love of plunder, these Malays more than any others were very much under the influence of their Arabian teachers, and had imbibed to the full the belief that to die for the religion of the Prophet Mohamad, was to there and then enter the alluring Paradise of Islam.

The three ships were sailing down the wind abreast, with the Peter Asmodeus on the outside, the Johanis in the centre, and the Jacobus nearest the Sumatran coast. As a last chance of stopping the prahus from boarding, the Admiral ordered the helms of all three ships to be put hard a-port, as if he meant to make for Sumatra, thus bringing his ships broadside on to the advancing fleet; and then, as the prahus came up, they were met first with a salvo from every gun in the port batteries, and then, immediately after, with a rain of bullets from the matchlocks. But it only checked them for a few minutes, and decided them to alter their advance. Instead of making for all three ships, as they appeared to intend at first, all the prahus bunched together and dashed for the Admiral’s ship, which was in the centre. When within fifty yards of the Johanis, the Malays commenced to fire their lelas and great blunderbusses, and many shots were embedded in the galleon’s thick sides. Luckily she was staunchly built, and well coated with good threeinch oak, on which the lela balls and not very powerful powder made but very little impression; and lucky also was it that the Admiral’s great voice made itself heard at the critical moment, when the miscellaneous contents of the great swivel blunderbusses, aimed at the row of heads
appearing above the bulwarks of the Johannis, were poured into his ship; for if the heads and shoulders had not ducked to the cover of the bulwarks, many of them would never have ached again. Then, a very few minutes after this escape, the prahus began to bump against her sides, and the cheerful order to "repel boarders" brought everyone to his feet again, and heads and hands and pistols were quickly over the side for one more shot at the climbing Malays before they were thrown on deck for the readier sword, pike and axe. Then the grim hand-to-hand fight commenced in earnest. For half an hour or more they struggled and strained and clambered up the sides of the ship from every point and all round; sometimes half a dozen or more would gain a footing on deck, only to be slaughtered there, and many a staunch man fell on the side of the defenders also, pierced by the longhandled "lembing", slashed with the keen "klawang", or more often stabbed from behind with the wavy-bladed "kris", wielded by some cunning Malay who had not lost his head in the ardour of attack, but had sedulously watched his opportunity, favoured by the increasing gloom of evening, to slip through the ranks, by passing between two men as they were busily engaged in defending themselves from an attack in front. Fearful were the wounds made by the waved blade and serrated edge of the kris when wielded by these men, who knew how to use it, and who could deliberately stab their victims from behind as they were engaged with another enemy in front. With a sibilant "Bismillah" the thrust was delivered, and the wound was enlarged and made more deadly by a turn of the wrist and blade, accompanied by the rest of the abjuration, "al-rahman-i-rahim"!

Too numerous were the enemy, and so utterly reckless of life were they, that it is not surprising they should have gained a footing at last, in spite of the strenuous valour
displayed by the white men. They won the forecastle, and quickly more than a hundred of them filled the forepart of the ship; then, sweeping before them the sailors, they bade fair to soon overwhelm the whole ship.

With shrill cries of “Allah!” and “Amok!” they rushed down the two ladders, and even dropped off the high edge of the forecastle on to the main deck. But here they met with a check, for John Smith and his ten rapier men,—who had constituted themselves a body-guard for the Admiral, on the poop,—by his orders now rushed to the defence of the waist, and quickly turned the tide of battle. Like lightning the long, lithe blades played amongst the half-naked bodies of the Malays, who could not by any means defend themselves from the novel attack, any more than they could harm the swordsmen, whose blades were a perfect defence, and whose bodies seemed invulnerable. At last this idea seemed to impress itself on the Malays, and seized with a panic, they began to give way. This was the end of their advantage, for soon they were in full retreat and scrambling over the bulwarks, to drop, some into their boats, and some into the sea.
CHAPTER XIII.

All this time the Jacobus and the Peter Asmodeus were unable to do anything towards helping their consort. It was dangerous work firing on the prahus clustered round the Johonis in the uncertain light, while an attack with the small boats would have been quickly overpowered; so the only thing to do was to bring the Peter Asmodeus, with the assistance of her oars, close to the Johonis, and then join in the hand-to-hand fight, but this wanted some very careful manoeuvring, in order to avoid interlacing the yards of the ships, and thus doing a lot of damage. By the time the crompster was close enough to join in the fight by fixing on to the side of the Johonis, the Malays had already been repulsed and were dropping back into their prahus, not cowed and beaten, but being literally shoved overboard and fighting every inch of the way like wild cats. The crompster therefore sheared off again to a safer distance.

It was now quite dark, and the Admiral would have been well pleased if he could have put out all his lights, in order to get away without the Malays knowing which way he went; but this was out of the question, because there was so much to do to clean up his ship and attend to his wounded, work which could not be done without plenty of light. He therefore ordered his two consorts to keep as close to him as possible, and continued his course towards the Straits, but keeping out as far from the coast as he could. The fight had been a severe one, and had not been
productive of any compensating profit, like the struggle with the African savages. Is was all very well to fight for the sake of some tangible return in the way of valuable merchandise; this appealed to the trader spirit of every member of the expedition; but to fight merely for the sake of saving their own lives, was a thing to be avoided at any risk of loss of dignity, if by any other means they could accomplish that end.

In this fight they had lost nine valuable men killed outright, besides many others wounded, some dangerously; and the only result had been to prove that the people of Achi were averse to any intercourse with the outside world, at any rate insomuch as it was represented by the Dutch flag. The fight was therefore to be regretted, and every soul hoped that the Malays had had a sufficiently severe lesson to make them avoid another encounter. But the next morning, as soon as it was light enough to see, this did not look as if it was going to be the case; for a very great number of prahus were visible between the Sumatran coast and the Dutch ships. Owing to the Admiral's care in drawing away from the coast as much as possible, they had not succeeded this time in getting the weather gauge of him; but they evidently meant another attack if they could manage it; and the only chance of avoiding this seemed to lie in bearing out to the open sea, because the prahus would be afraid to follow too far out.

But by evening the prospect of avoiding a fight looked very poor. More than thirty prahus were in view just out of range of the crompster's gun, and it could not be doubted but that as soon as it was dark enough they would try again, unless by some stratagem they could be avoided. Luckily the nights were very dark, and by carefully covering up all his lights the Admiral hoped to be able to do
this, the only trouble being that the Malays might perhaps attack before it got dark enough to carry out his design.

By seven o'clock it was dark, and no forward movement of the prahus had been observed. They were spread out within easy speaking distance of each other, about a mile away from the ships, and perhaps five miles from the coast; and as it got darker it could be seen that each of them carried a small light, probably the fire of their cooking places or the common smoky torches made of wood, oil and resin which were used by the people of that region; consequently their whereabouts was easily discerned.

By eight o'clock the Admiral's design to evade them was ready for execution. Three long rafts had been prepared on board the ships, all except fastening them together. They consisted, each of them, of about a dozen empty casks, which were to be joined together with a double row of stout planks. Two small masts were ready for each raft, carrying sails and also several posts to be fixed at intervals to carry lanthorns and a rudder for each raft. All this material having been lowered over the sides of the ships, the rafts were quickly put together. All sail was then taken in on board the ships, so that they rode under bare masts and made no progress through the water. Then all the lanthorns on board the rafts were lighted, and the rudders being fastened hard a-starboard, they were pushed away from the ships, and as each light on the rafts passed the bows, corresponding lights on board the ships were extinguished; so the ships rode easily as if at anchor, and the lighted rafts sailed on to take their place.

It was a simple trick, but it easily deceived the Malays, as could be plainly discerned by the fact that the prahus continued to keep pace with the lighted rafts, and soon their lights all disappeared. It was, of course, impossible to
tell at what hour the Malays would decide to attack the supposed ships and so discover the trick; but it would probably not be for some time, as they would certainly wait until more prahus joined them from the coast. Their previous experience had taught them caution, so that it was even within the bounds of possibility that they would not attack that night at all, but wait until the next night, in which case, of course, as soon as day dawned, they would find nothing to attack but some useless tubs and planks. After the lights had disappeared for about an hour the Admiral's three ships got laboriously under weigh again and by tacking in short stretches, succeeded before daylight in getting about twelve miles away from the coast, before they again resumed their course towards the straits, which they at last entered about midway between Sumatra and Penang Island. They never saw any more of the Achinese prahus, and easily imagined that there was a good deal of cursing when the trick played by them on the Malays was discovered.

They had now to travel over the most dangerous part of their voyage. In the narrow seas between Sumatra and Malacca, there were generally to be found two or three Portuguese ships of war, guarding the trading craft which were continually going to Europe from the Spice Islands. The great carracks did not come so far eastwards; they were generally loaded at Goa; but ships of very considerable size, and with valuable cargoes of spices, came from the Moluccas and called at Malacca, where they generally picked up an escort to see them well out into the Indian Ocean.

James Neccy determined to make for the island of Pangkor, and there lay up for a few days, in a good natural harbour which Christian Lentholm knew of on the side next the mainland. He could thus give his wounded men a better
chance of recovery, and also fill his water casks, as well as take in a supply of coconuts and other fresh vegetables. They got there safely without further adventure, spent ten days at anchor under the island, and thoroughly explored it. Christian Lentholm had visited it before, and thought it might make a convenient stopping place for Dutch traders to the Far East. The Portugals had not as yet made any attempt to use it; but there was a small colony of Malays from the opposite coast living on the island, engaged chiefly in fishing, and seemingly disposed to be friendly; at least they professed to detest the Portugals, whose methods were too much those of a conquering race to suit the proud Malays, these men for instance, agreed to do anything to help the Dutch, if only they would fight the "Saranies".

Christian Lentholm and John Smith discovered two or three people who remembered their previous visit, and had many interesting conversations with them about the politics of that district. Finally this ended in the Admiral agreeing to accept the pilotage of a prahu to take him into the mouth of the Perak River, where he was assured he could get some tin in exchange for his cloth, and certainly might expect to meet friendly people, who would be quite prepared to trade with him and also assist him in any attempt against the Portugals.

Accordingly, on the tenth day after their arrival, they got up anchor, and following the lead of the Malay prahu, sailed down the coast until they found the mouth of a fine broad river. Here the Malay pilot was persuaded to come on board the Admiral's ship, which led the way up the stream. It took them two tides to reach a place called Kota Stia, where they found a considerable village, with coconut trees and many clumsy-looking domestic buffaloes. They
were detained here for three days, awaiting the arrival of a chief called Dato' Bandar, without whom the people would not commence to trade for anything except fish, coconuts and fruit.

This chief was said to be up the river, but messengers were immediately sent to fetch him; and on the third day he arrived, coming down with six very long canoes, each having ten paddles a side, and being armed with small lelas throwing balls of less than half a pound in weight: children’s cannon they seemed to be, but in reality very effective at short range, owing to the ease with which they were turned in any direction on their single pivots.

The Dato’ Bandar proved to be a very affable old gentleman, most polite and anxious to assist the white men. Except that his mouth was large and somewhat misshapen by the habit of chewing pepper leaves, which also stained his lips and teeth a bright red, he was not at all bad looking, and appeared very dignified and imposing in a suit of dull black linen and a very extraordinary starched black turban, arranged so as to exhibit points or corners sticking out in all directions. In front of his own prahu, a man stood up holding a small black flag, on which was emblazoned the double-bladed sword of the Prophet of Islam.

By the intervention of the Dato’ Bandar, the Admiral was able to supply his ships with a goodly lot of buffalo meat and some rice in mat bags, with which he hoped to get his men familiar, as no wheat or other corn except a little maize was obtainable in the country. The Dato’ Bandar had also about two hundred ingots of tin, which he was anxious to sell; but he wanted, in exchange, either some of the African slaves or some tusks of ivory, which were much finer than those of the native elephants. However, neither the Admiral nor his partners were anxious to get
rid of either of these commodities at present; but when the Malay chief, who was entertained in the Admiral’s cabin, saw the two dwarf girls and understood that they were also slaves, he was struck with astonishment and delight, and incontinently offered the whole two hundred ingots of tin for them; but they also were not for sale. They spent three whole days bargaining for this tin, and had at last settled what was to be given for it, namely, one of the slaves from the PETER ASMODEUS and one large tusk, besides a heterogeneous lot of other small articles in the shape of beads and cloth, when it suddenly struck one of the super-cargoes that some of the ingots were lighter than others. This led them to weigh it, and it was found that, although they were apparently all cast in moulds of the same size, the weights were very diverse; and one of the lightest, being chiselled in half, was found to contain a large piece of iron embedded in the middle of it.

The Dato’ Bandar, when his attention was called to it, professed to be very astonished and grieved, protesting that he had been cheated by his people who had sold the tin to him, and offering to take back all the light ingots and make a fresh bargain for the heavy ones. So another two days were spent in bargaining, the Chief preserving his politeness through it all, and leaving the Admiral and his traders under the impression that they had done an excellent stroke of business; which undoubtedly they had, for tin was at that time a very rare and valuable metal, although this was not quite so valuable a lot as they expected it to be. One lesson, however, they learnt, and a very useful one too, was not to trust the Malays, in spite of their apparent honesty. The Admiral summed up the character of the Dato’ Bandar very concisely, by saying that he was “a gentleman, but a dishonest trader.”
Nearly two weeks were spent very happily with these people, who showed very evident regret when the time came for the ships to heave anchor, so that the Admiral, persuaded thereto by John Smith, offered to take two or three of them on with him as far as Johor and bring them back on his return journey, if the Dato' Bandar would agree to get ready for him some more tin without adulterating it with iron; and this being agreed to, they went down the river, taking with them three young Malay men of good birth, who professed to be willing to work as common sailors during the voyage; and very handy and useful they proved to be, whilst their knowledge of the coast, as far as Malacca, assisted the sailing masters a good deal.

It was on account of what these men said about the great number of turtles which frequented the islands, that the Admiral was induced to touch at a small group of nine little islands just off the mouth of the Perak River; and through that, by one lucky turn of Fortune’s wheel, he amply repaid himself and his expedition for the losses and dangers which they had already experienced.
CHAPTER XIV.

Very lovely indeed were these little islands; resting places fit for fairies, John Smith declares them to be. They were uninhabited, and clothed up to the top of their precipitous rocky sides with perennial green. Blue water ran right up to the shores, and on one side of the largest island stretched a beautiful sandy beach, divided by a tiny stream of fresh, limpid water, rippling down a rocky gorge to join the blue waters of the sea after attempting to lose itself by filtering through the bright yellow sand. Here it was, the Malays declared, that on moonlight nights, and during certain seasons of the year, the great turtles crawled up on the sands to lay their eggs. It was off these sands, and within a hundred yards of the land, that the ships dropped their anchors, which did not touch bottom until full thirty fathoms of hempen cable had been paid out. And then, regardless of sharks, scores of the sailors threw off their clothes and dashed into the water, to swim to land and search for turtles' eggs under the guidance of the Malays. But these latter were very uncertain if any would be found, for they said the "hantus" or spirits of the place should first have been propitiated by incantations and a burning censor of sweet-smelling woods and gums: at any rate, if they found eggs already laid, certainly the turtles would not come up that night, nor for many succeeding nights, to lay any more, because of the omission. John Smith says he quite believed that, but thought that perhaps the noise and tumult made
by the sailors might have had quite as much to do with keeping them away.

Very delicious was the fresh, cool water of the little stream, after the tainted liquid which was doled out to the men on board, and on which the brackish water they had obtained at Kota Stia was not much improvement. The men amused themselves by hunting amongst the rocks and diving for shells, of which many very beautiful ones were found, having a fine pearly lustre inside. These were carefully cleaned and stored away in their boxes to delight their children at home. They found also great oysters with shells two feet across, which the Malays showed them how to roast in the fire, until the shells opened and the delicious flesh was disclosed ready cooked and fit to be eaten.

But the Malays themselves spent all their time collecting hideous black crawling creatures, which looked like animated cucumbers, and which, they said, the Chinese traders at Johor would buy at a good price, as they considered them a great delicacy.

The anchorage was too dangerous for a long stay at this place, and the Admiral would certainly not have waited more than one night, even if he had not been interrupted, as he was about an hour before dawn, by the sound of cannon firing out at sea on the other side of the islands. James Neccy did not think of waiting to enquire what the firing was about, nor whether it was friend or foe, but immediately got up his anchors and sailed out to investigate. As soon as he had got out beyond the islands, about a mile distant, they saw in the quickly coming daylight a great ship, which was recognised by many of the crew, as well as by the officers, to be Portuguese by her rig, and they soon saw that she was flying the Portuguese flag; so there could be no doubt concerning her nationality. She
was doing her best to keep off about twenty-five or thirty Malay prahus, which were clustered round her; and which, even as the three Dutch ships came up, boarded the Portuguese and continued the fight on his decks.

Now here was a three-cornered quarrel which might require delicate management, but which could not under any circumstances end otherwise than favourably for the Dutch, as they had the great advantage of the weather gauge, and were quite strong enough with that position to whip the prahus and the Portuguese ship altogether. It was, however, evidently the best policy not to be in a hurry, so that both their enemies should have time to weaken themselves before they joined in the fight. The prahus were undoubtedly the same which they had fought with before. They had missed the Admiral's ships owing to the trick played on them, and apparently had picked up the Portgal instead, and deeming her an easy prize, had forthwith attacked her.

Deliberately the Admiral made his arrangements to move down his galleons one on either side of the Portugal's great ship, the crompster going on in advance with her oars all in readiness to make a dash if required, and her long gun loaded with several small balls to commence the game by firing on the prahus. As soon as she was near enough, she sent a dozen small cannon balls into the prahus lying the farthest from the Portugal's ship on the port side, then quickly reloading, and sluing her gun, she sent another shower into those on the starboard side, and still steadily advancing until she got within range for her bow culverins, she fired them simultaneously into the prahus on either side of the Portugal with deadly effect; for the Malays had now taken fright, and were crowding into them from the ship's deck. It was one thing to board a single white man's ship, but quite another matter to be pounded from such a
distance as this tremendous gun carried, so the pirates had no other option but to make off as fast as they could. But old Paul Keyut was not disposed to let them off so lightly. He had not had a chance at them when they attacked the JOHANIS before, for fear of injuring his consort; so he determined now to teach them a lesson. Steering a wide course to avoid the Portugal's great ship, he chased them for two or three miles down the wind, keeping well within the range of his two bow culverins and continually firing on them, until, for safety, they so scattered that he could not do them much harm without greatly wasting his time; so then he turned, and getting his oars to work, rejoined his consorts.

James Neccy in the meantime, leaving old Paul Keyut to deal with the Malay pirates, dropped down slowly and with mathematical precision, one galleon on either side of the Portuguese great ship, and when he had manoeuvred into position within easy speaking distance, he backed his own sails and ordered his Portuguese interpreter — John Smith's assistant super-cargo on the JOHANIS — to hail her and demand her instant surrender at discretion, or he would sink her with a broadside from each of his galleons.

The poor Portugal had no choice but to obey, for he was in too dangerous a plight to think of resisting; so very soon the royal flag of Portugal fluttered down from the masthead. James Neccy then ordered her Commander to come on board his ship, bringing with him his commission and all information about his ship. A boat was lowered and two Fidalgoes in splendid armour and plumed helmets stepped into her and were rowed to the Dutch galleon, where, on the main deck, they proudly drew their swords and offered them to the Admiral, declaring themselves prisoners of war and at the mercy of their captors.
One of the officers represented himself to be the General in command of the soldiers, of which there were originally one hundred on board the great ship; while the other said he was the second in command of the vessel. He explained that their Commander had been killed in the fight with the Achinese, and that in point of fact they had suffered very severely, not less than one hundred soldiers and sailors being either killed or badly wounded; otherwise, he observed with a sardonic smile, the renowned Admiral would not have been able to make such an easy prize of His Portuguese Majesty's ship.

He was aware that the „great captain, James Neccy”, was before all things a trader, and pointing out that his ship, being a man-of-war, had not of course any cargo that would be useful to „so important and magnanimous a merchant as their present captor”, he expressed a hope that he would be allowed to proceed on his way to Malacca, of course after paying a fair and sufficient ransom for the privilege of doing so.

He explained that, except for the General, whom he introduced as Don Guzman da Silva-y-Ampulvida, there was not another live man of Fidalgo rank on board, now that the Commander was killed. He hoped, therefore, that the „Magnanimous Admiral would condescend to fix their ransom at so moderate a figure as to make it possible for them to pay it at once, but at the same time he must not be considered as infringing on the dignity of Don Guzman, who being of Fidalgo rank must without doubt pay a commensurate sum.”

With this and many other compliments couched in most florid language, on the splendid seamanship displayed by his sailing masters, and on the extraordinary gun on the crompster, while not forgetting the marksmanship also, he
proceeded to tender his own thanks, and those of the General, for the timely aid vouchsafed to them in driving off the Malay pirates, without which he could not say but what they would have been compelled to blow up the ship; for they could not have borne to surrender it; and he concluded by offering ten thousand crowns as ransom, five thousand on the part of the General, Don Guzman, — who seemed to flinch at being valued so high, — and the other five thousand to redeem the great ship, her crew and armament. It was, he averred, lucky that they had just about so much money on board, which they were taking to Malacca to pay the salaries and other charges of the garrison of that port.

The Admiral at once made them understand that ten thousand crowns could not be considered an adequate ransom; and after much chaffering and a reluctant admission that perhaps there might be found another five thousand on board, the Lieutenant offered to go and fetch the money, whilst the General stayed on board the Admiral's ship; but this also was not accepted, and the Admiral, prompted by his assistant super-cargo, who had detected something suspicious in a half-heard whisper between the two Portugals, declared his intention of going on board their ship with a party, to judge for himself what would be a fair ransom to exact, and to bring it back.

This determination seemed to stagger the two Portuguese gentlemen, and they rapidly raised their offer to twenty and, ultimately, twenty-five thousand crowns, urging that they could not think of troubling their captors to fetch the money, and pointing out the disorder of their ship; the angry passions which their presence might engender amongst their people, who might be prompted to discourtesy; the impossibility of getting at the money unless the General or
his companion, the now virtual commander of the ship, went to order its production and many other trivial excuses; but James Neccy only smiled and persisted in his expressed intention, shewing them that it would be absurd for him, as their successful opponent, to let their ship go free until he had made quite sure of her value for ransom and also the object of her present voyage. He further explained that he held a charter from the States General of Holland, not only to trade, but to do damage to all State enemies wherever found, which charter he would willingly show to his prisoners, who had not fulfilled his demand by bringing with them on board his ship, their own commission. Moreover, he informed them that what he had done was merely retaliation and quite fair, as he had been attacked on his way out and had suffered severely at the hands of their countrymen. He therefore very politely requested them to descend to his own state room, where they should be properly entertained until he returned from his visit to their ship.

At this the Portugals commenced to talk together, but being excited they failed to lower their voices to a whisper, so that the assistant super-cargo heard what they were saying, as he was standing near them by virtue of his office of interpreter. Suddenly, to the astonishment of everybody, he trew his arms round the man who professed to be the Lieutenant of the Portuguese ship, and pressing one hand over his mouth, shouted out.

"Treachery! gag them, they are going to order their ship to be blown up." Willing hands quickly secured both the Portuguese gentlemen, and scarves were tied over their mouths, before James Neccy could demand of his officious officer what he meant by his action. The latter replied that he had all the time had an opinion that the man who
represented himself to be the Lieutenant to the dead Commander of the Portuguese ship was not what he pretended to be, because his companion deferred to him in everything, and in fact seemed to have no authority as to the different amounts of ransom to be offered, or on any other point of the negociations, always also addressing him in terms of respect, which certainly were not proper from a Fidalgo to a man of an inferior class; and that on the question of the Admiral's visit to their ship being pressed, the pretended Lieutenant had declared that his papers and property must not by any means fall into the hands of the "heretics", but that the ship should first be blown up; and they had arranged that he should go to the side, and whilst pretending to give instructions as to the entertainment of the Admiral on board, he would order the Captain — who by this seemed after all to be alive — to lay a train to the magazine with a slow match, and then as James Neccy and his party stepped on board over one side of the ship, the Captain and certain others were to get into a boat on the other side, firing the slow match at the same time, and so to send the ship, the Dutch Admiral and all the ship contained to perdition. When the Admiral and his officers heard this explanation, it was quite evident to them that they had something more than a mere Lieutenant to the Commander of a war-ship to deal with.

The two gentlemen were therefore assisted into the Admiral's state room, and a careful watch was put on the men in the boat which brought them on board. The Admiral, in the meantime, ordered twenty-five men from each of his ships to prepare to escort him on board the prize, and he with his interpreter and his chief officers went into his state-room to further question his prisoners.
CHAPTER XV.

On entering the state-room, the Admiral ordered the Portuguese gentlemen to be unbound and the scarves to be taken from their mouths, thencourteously asking them to be seated he apologised for their rough treatment, and informing them that he now intended visiting their ship, he asked them if they wished to say anything further to him before he went. He further offered them wine and food and assured them that, although he intended to detain them in that room until he returned, it was his wish to treat them with every consideration and respect, because he was convinced that they held a higher position than they had acknowledged.

Don Guzman, in reply, merely said that they would probably be convinced of the truth of their statement after they had visited the ship; as for the rest, they were prisoners, and of course at the mercy of their captors; but as it was not usual for cavaliers to be treated in the way they had been, he supposed it was owing to a different level of etiquette in use amongst merchant traders. His companion did not open his mouth, but preserving a sullen silence, satisfied himself by glaring at the interpreter as if he wished to eat him.

James Neccy therefore, having collected his boats from the other ships, and having seen that all his men were properly armed and their matchlocks charged, rowed over to the Portuguese great ship, and with fifty of his men climbed on board, leaving the others to guard the boats. Marching his men to the after part of the ship, he drew
them up on the upper deck of the poop, and then, with
his officers moving to the front, he first, through his inter-
preter, proclaimed the ship his lawful prize, and required
all her officers to come forward and surrender their swords.
When this was done, and the officers, fifteen men in all,
had been grouped on the upper deck, he asked them to
depute one of their number to go and bring the ship’s
papers and commission to him; but this, they said, was
impossible, as their commander had taken with him the
key of the strong chest, in which all the documents were
kept. The Admiral therefore waived that point for the
present, and ordered the whole ship’s company to be mustered
in the waist on the main deck, and all the hand guns,
pistols and other arms to be piled up in front of the muster,
at the same time bringing his own men forward to the
edge of the orlop and ordering them to blow up their
matches, so that they should overawe the Portuguese into
quick obedience.

But the crew, already cowed, hastened to the muster to
deliver up their arms. There appeared to be about one
hundred and twenty of them able to do duty, although
many of these were slightly wounded. On enquiry, James
Neccy ascertained that the original ship’s company consisted
of two hundred and thirty all told, but of these at least
seventy had been killed in the fight with the Malays and
cast overboard; while the remainder, ten of whom were
priests, and the rest seriously wounded men, were still below,
unable to move.

The Admiral then, stepping to the front, called out in
the Dutch language, and enquired if there were any Hollanders
on board, as he was disposed to take into his own service,
any such as were inclined to accept his terms and promise
fidelity. In response two men stepped out from the group
and came forward, then John Smith and Lewes de Havre repeated the question in English and French, and two of the former and one of the latter nation stepped forward.

These men, on being questioned as to why they were on board a man-of-war belonging to an enemy of their respective countries, replied that they were prisoners taken from different ships by the Portugals, and that they had been given the choice, either to serve on board their captor’s ship or to be hanged. They had elected to save their lives, but they begged now to be taken into the service of the Dutch merchant, more especially as they were all Protestants and had been for that reason very badly treated by their masters, and especially by the priests, who had threatened them with the Inquisition and its terrors if they did not recant and be baptised as Romanists, which they protested they would rather die than do.

They were forthwith ordered to pick out arms from the heap on the deck, and range themselves in rank with their new comrades; but first they were cross-examined as to the Portuguese ship, what her mission was, where bound to and whence last.

Their replies were very astonishing and also gratifying to the Admiral and his men, for it appeared that the ship they had taken was the great ship San Salvadore, and that she was one of a fleet of five men-of-war, under André Furtado de Mendoça, the Captain-General of Malacca, who was returning from an expedition to Amboina and Sunda, from which islands he had expelled some Dutch settlers who were trading with the natives, and whose property and valuables he had confiscated. His ship had got separated from her companions, and was searching for them when the Achinese attacked her. Moreover, the men said that Dom André Furtado was actually at that present moment on
board the Dutch ship *JOHANIS*, whither he had gone in masquerade as the Lieutenant to the Commander of the *San Salvadore*, in order to judge for himself as to the best chance of getting out of the difficulty in which he was involved. The actual Commander of the San Salvadore was alive and well amongst the group of officers who had surrendered their swords, and he, when pointed out, acknowledged the fact. James Neccy was further informed that he had taken a very rich prize, for besides a large treasure in coined money which she was taking to Malacca, she had on board a splendid collection of jewels, gold and silver plate, belonging to the Captain-General and the Romish priests, as well as many other articles of great value which Dom André Furtado intended to present to native princes and others whom he might find it politic to conciliate in the interests of the Government of his Province.

It appeared that the fleet had been dispersed by a terrific gale, and the *San Salvadore* had not seen any of her consorts since. She had, in fact, been very much damaged herself by the wind, and this accounted in a great measure for the poor resistance she had offered to the Achinese pirates, many of her guns being unshipped and some gone overboard.

James Neccy decided, if possible, to keep the *San Salvadore*, to divide the survivors of her crew amongst all the ships, and by not allowing them to wear any arms, and keeping them at work and well watched, to render them powerless to do any harm, replacing the men he took from the *San Salvadore* by a crew drafted from his own ships. The wounded he proposed to leave on their own ship under charge of the priests, who would thus, by having plenty of work to do, be also kept out of mischief.

Then courteously approaching the Portuguese officers, he asked the Captain to conduct him over the ship and especially
to point out to him the place where the treasure was kept. The crestfallen Portugals had no other choice but to obey, and contented themselves by begging that their wounded comrades and the priests might be treated as kindly as circumstances would permit: for their own part, they were prisoners, and must submit to their illfortune as well as they were able. It took some time to count all the money in the chests, and to make an accurate list of the gold, silver, plate and jewels; but when it was done, and all transferred to the Dutch ships, those of the crew who were fit for work were exchanged for one hundred men from the Dutch ships to take charge of the prize. The ship’s papers were then carefully read over, and were discovered to be of such great political value that James Neccy decided to send them back to Europe as soon as possible, if he could find a Dutch trader homeward bound. Everything was found to be as the new recruits stated, and the prize was really a rich one.

It was evening before all the arrangements were made and James Neccy returned to his own ship, where he delivered his commission into Dom André Furtado’s hands, thus informing him that he was aware of his position. He also informed him that it was his intention to at once proceed to Johor, avoiding Malacca, and, if possible, any chance of falling in with other Portuguese ships. From Johor he intended sending back to Malacca the Captain-General and all his prisoners, after having taken guarantees for a fair ransom, but at their own charges.

Dom André Furtado professed himself satisfied with this arrangement, and excused himself for having endeavoured to deceive the Admiral by calling his action merely a ruse of war, which was quite justifiable under the circumstances; it had not succeeded, and there was an end of it. He only
hoped that he might be able to persuade his captors to send him straight to Malacca without taking him to Johor. This James Neccy promised to do if he found it possible, but he could not agree to go in very close to Malacca for the purpose, because of the danger of meeting with an overpowering Portuguese force. All these arrangements having been made, the Dutch flag was hoisted on board the San Salvadoré, and the four ships proceeded down the Straits, keeping well towards the Sumatran coast. For two days they saw nothing, but on the third day, after they had passed the latitude of Malacca, they sighted a ship, which proved to be a Portuguese frigate of about seventy tons burthen, which had been sent over to Sumatra, with a present from the Government of Malacca to a Malay king, who had promised to ally himself with the Portugals.

The frigate was returning to Malacca with a cargo of pepper, and after an exciting chase by the Peter Asmodeus, was captured, and her cargo having been transferred to the Dutch ships, the wounded men and priests were first moved in, and then Dom André Furtado, his officers and some of the other prisoners also embarked; but eighty of the best of the men were detained by the Admiral to assist in working his ships, and as a guarantee for the payment of the ramson.

The unfortunate Portuguese Captain-General was presented by James Neccy with his credentials and five thousand crowns, besides some of his personal effects in the way of jewellery and clothes; but the important political documents which had been found were kept, and Dom André congratulated himself that, considering all the circumstances of his capture and helplessness, he had been very leniently treated, perhaps much more easily than he would have served a Dutch or English vessel captured in the same way.
The property which was restored to him, the value of the great-ship and the frigate, and a fair ransom for his officers and men were carefully appraised, the priests being quaintly enough rated at five crowns for each man, the same value for ransom as was placed on the wounded men and sailors. To this was added ten thousand crowns, the amount which Dom André himself fixed as the proper amount to be paid for the enfranchisement of his own person; and a document of agreement, fairly inscribed in Dutch and Portuguese, was drawn up, whereby Dom Adré Furtado de Mendoça promised, “as soon after his arrival in Malacca as possible, to send to Johor, sixty-five thousand five hundred and ten crowns to The Most Excellent and Honourable Merchant, James Neccy, or to any person having authority from him to receive it, in compensation for help vouchsafed by the said merchant to the Government of Malacca.” James Neccy on his part promised, on receipt of the said monies, to release the eighty men he held as prisoners without further ransom,” or as many of them as should then be alive.”

This document was signed by James Neccy and his Captains on the part of the Dutch, and by Dom André Furtado, his Captain and the General of his soldiers, on the part of the Portuguese, each party to the agreement keeping a copy of it. To a suggestion made by Dom André that a clause should be inserted prohibiting the Dutch merchants of that expedition from attacking Portuguese ships, the Admiral felt himself unable to agree; and even when the Captain-General promised to bind himself not to do anything to hamper his movements east of Malacca, James Neccy sturdily declared that the two countries were at war, and he could not by any means agree to refrain from upholding the dignity of his nation's flag. He must, he said, meet any
attempt to molest his ships or commerce in the best way he could, but, in his own interests, he should try all he could to avoid an encounter, naively adding, "especially if he was met by a force equal or superior to his own". With this equivocal answer to his pacific proposals Dom André was constrained to be contented; and then, with many professions of mutual admiration, they parted company, the crest-fallen Captain-General going on board the Portuguese frigate with his officers, to make the best of their way to Malacca, and there explain his disaster, and the soberly triumphant Dutchmen filling their sails for the Farther East, conscious of a most successful episode in their voyage of adventurous commerce.

The Portuguese power in the East, which had for some years now been showing signs of decadence, had been treated to a severe lesson and punished by a reverse, which it would feel more severely than any other, as it tended to lower the inordinate pride and arrogance with which its Eastern polity was conducted; and not only that, but with the advent of such a sturdy trading community as the Dutch in the Far Eastern seas, the cherished monopoly in pepper, which the King of Portugal had for so long enjoyed, bade fair to receive its death-blow.

The old policy of Prince Henry the Navigator, who encouraged his captains to bring home captives from the countries they visited, and the encouragement of marriages between Portuguese and these captives, had born its fruit in a mixed race, the character of which did not tend towards excellence. It has been written that "The Portuguese have shown an alacrity not found in other European nations to mix their race with others differing entirely in status from themselves." This was a main factor in the decadence of their power in the Orient, while the growing influence
of the Romish priests was another cause, and the edifice of Albuquerque’s “Empire of the East”, like the Spanish’ “Empire of the West,” tottered to its fall.

Not only did the events of the past month raise the prestige of the Dutch a flag by this blow to the Portuguese power, but the Malay pirates from Achi, fostered as they were by rich Arab traders, and persuaded that the “Faith” must triumph, had also learned a lesson, and were made to confess that the new white men were powerful and not to be attacked with impunity.

John Smith in recording the history of this part of the voyage and the tale of the fighting in the narrow sea, indulges in day dreams and prognostications of a bright future for trade, in which the Portugals were to take a second and very inferior place. If only there were a few more ships, either Dutch or of his own nation, he would gladly join in an attack on the Portugal’s stronghold of Malacca, and he had very little doubt but that it would be an easy conquest. But it was not yet to be: the English Company had only just started to get a foot-hold in India, and that was much too large a matter to allow them for some time to go farther eastwards. The Dutch were to be the pioneers in these waters and James Neccy one of the first to make an impression there, to cause his influence to be felt by native princes, as well as by the Latin race which had op to that period dominated the region.

Three more days found them in the narrow strait dividing the island of Singhapura from the end of the Peninsula, and at anchor in the mouth of the Johor River, where they were after a very short time visited by the King of Johor in person, and given a very cordial welcome; for this important chief was personally acquainted with both John Smith and Christian Lenthолm, who five years before had spent three
or four months trading in his river, and had then won his confidence by their fair dealing.

The King invited James Neccy and his officers to go up the river to his capital, called Batu Sabar, which was situated about six leagues from the sea, and together with its suburb of Kota Sabarang, on the opposite side of the river, was quite an important town. It was found impossible to get the galleons and the great ship so far up the river, but the crompster was with little difficulty rowed up on one tide, and the Admiral, taking with him John Smith and the three Malays from Perak, whom he could trust to give a good account of the fight with the Achinese pirates and the capture of the Portuguese man-of-war, very gladly followed the royal canoe until she stopped at the King's landing-place.

Here they spent some very enjoyable days, being most honorably entertained by the King Regale, who was most anxious to gain their friendship, and who had come to understand that this particular sort of white man was not connected in any way with those who held authority at Malacca, but was, on the contrary, at enmity with them, and quite willing to fight them on very slight provocation.
CHAPTER XVI.

About a month was spent in the Johor River, and some profitable trading, was done with King Regale, who was very anxious to obtain all the merchandise that he could, as he was able to retail it by means of his large sailing prahus to the islands within reach at a very large profit, and also to the Chinese merchants who frequented his town. The traders got in exchange for their merchandise a considerable amount of gold dust and nuggets, which had been collected for King Regale by some Malay settlers whom he and his predecessors had introduced from Menangkabau in Sumatra, and who had gradually spread all over the districts called Gamencheh and Segamat, round the base of Gunong Ladang, which the Portuguese called Mount Ophir, believing that King Solomon got his gold to embellish the Temple from this region.

These settlers from Sumatra had become a considerable power in the interior. They had fraternised with the aboriginal tribes, converting many of them to Islam, and had covered much of the country which had formerly owned allegiance to the Malay kings of Malacca. They had recognised that they had no rights to the soil, and as they brought no women with them from Sumatra, they took the native women for wives, or slaves — the terms, in John Smith’s opinion, were synonymous all over the East — and flattered the native men by pretending to accept chiefs of their
nomination. They called the women "owners of the soil", in exchange for which flattering appellation they very willingly did all the work of cultivating it for their husbands delectation, and the latter thus had all their time at their own command, to hunt and fish, and get rich by collecting the produce of the forests and gold from the streams, which last, even if they had to sell it to their King at Johor for a very small price, meant profit to them, because their wives did all the work required to find the family in food.

James Neccy also got from Johor a good deal of merchandise in the way of sweet-smelling gums and resins, as well as eagle wood, which, although a Protestant, he saw no sin in selling to the Romanists for incense and at a very large profit. He got no quantity of tin from Johor, as the country did not produce it, and the King, who was also anxiously looking for it for the Chinese merchants, had only what he could get from some islands towards Java.

After the Dutch ships had been about three weeks in the Johor River, the Captain-General of Malacca sent for his men with the full ransom agreed upon. A large Chinese junk had been chartered to bring them away, and had brought two Portuguese officers with letters from Dom André as well as the money. But when all had been settled, it was found that of the eighty men who had been brought to Johor, only sixty-two wished to go to Malacca, the other eighteen protesting that they would no longer serve under the Portuguese flag. They were not Portuguese, but natives of other countries, Italians, Germans, Scandinavians and others. After they had been carefully cross-examined, James Neccy agreed to keep them in his own employ at a fair wage, and the amount of their ransom was deducted from the monies sent by Dom André Furtado and returned to him.

The King Regale, when he came to understand that these
men were to be sent back to Malacca, was greatly troubled, and proposed that they should there and then be all krissed, for, as he said, it was only keeping alive more enemies. He could not understand the Admiral's obligation to keep to the terms of his agreement, and was greatly surprised when he refused to sell them to him as slaves for twice or even thrice the amount fixed for their ransom. But the Admiral was firm, and for fear any accident should befall the junk which was to take them to Malacca, he sent the PETER ASMODEUS to escort them well on their way. After they had gone, King Regale disclosed to James Neccy that one of the officers had been tempting him to attack the Dutch ships, and had promised in the Captain-General's name that, if he did so, the Captain-General would enter into an alliance with him, and together they would wage war against all Dutch ships that came into the narrow seas.

"But," said the King, "I told him that I was afraid, and that I was not strong enough to take your ships; and moreover, I think that the great Admiral would be a better ally for me than the Saranies."

Furthermore he proposed to James Neccy that they should join together and attack Malacca itself, assuring him that all his Menangkabau people would assist from the land side, and that the town and fort could be easily taken. But the Admiral — incensed as he was by the attempt made by the officer to excite the King of Johor against him — proved to King Regale that they could not get together a sufficient force and artillery enough to do much damage to the strong Portuguese walls, nor would his charter authorise him to engage in such an act of warfare as bombarding an enemy's town; he promised, however, that when he returned to Europe he would endeavour to engage his Government in the enterprise, because he felt certain that, if Portugal was
allowed to remain in possession of such a strong position, Dutch trade could never prosper in the Far East.

And thus a month or more went by, some trading, some politics, a very great deal of indulgence in eating the delicious food prepared by the King's cook, and a lot of amusement in the way of cock fighting, encounters between great water buffaloes and indeed anything that would fight, for this sort of sport was greatly enjoyed by the Malays, who trained not only cocks and buffaloes, but doves and quails, little fishes and even locusts, beetles and cockroaches to fight and wagered heavy stakes on the issue.

All night long the town was alive with the music of drums and gongs, screaming fifes and flageolets, so that sleep was difficult to attain, and John Smith and the Admiral were asked to first one chief's house and then another, to eat their evening meal and witness some performance of dancing girls, conjuring or sword play, to hear a famous story-teller, or a lot of reverend Hajis chant a long religious exercise, which was not generally finished before dawn.

In return, the Admiral took the King and all his chiefs over his ships, entertaining them as well as he was able. On this occasion the little dwarf girls dressed up in their finery and danced, while John Smith and his rapier men showed how they cleared the decks of the Achinese pirates, and the African savages, who were now a very stalwart and contented lot of men, went thorough a war dance. But that which interested the King most was the artillery, and especially the long gun "Young Anna" on board the PETER ASMODEUS; he was astonished at the distance she would carry and at the accuracy of her shooting; and when he hit a target himself after only three trials, he was delighted beyond measure, and offered to buy her for anything the Admiral demanded in exchange, but she was not for sale.
And then one day the Peter Asmodeus slipped down the river to join her consorts, and they all sailed out of the eastern end of the Straits, followed by the good wishes of King Regale and the Johor chiefs. The Admiral took with him a letter to the King of Pahang, whom the King of Johor claimed as a vassal. But it was not proposed to stop at Pahang unless they were obliged to do so, as the mouth of that river was known to be very dangerous, by reason of the sand bar over which the breakers rolled with tremendous force. The intention was to go on at once to Patani and there leave John Smith according to agreement, do some trading, and then return to Europe as soon as possible, calling at the same places as on the outward journey, and making up the cargoes with spices and pepper, if more valuable merchandise was not obtainable.

The voyage up the east coast was a fairly prosperous one, and no particular incident occurred. Some Chinese junks were seen and passed without speaking; and except for that, the fleet arrived off the mouth of the Patani River without anything occurring to break the monotony of the voyage.

A good deal of ceremony was displayed on their arrival, many officers visiting them in highly-decorated barges demanding presents, but offering nothing beyond empty compliments in return, and holding out no hopes of their being able to see the Ruler of the country, who was a widowed Queen, who, according to the custom of the country, did not show herself to the male sex. This was not quite what the Admiral liked, as he felt that he would have a much better chance to trade if he had an interview with the actual Head of the State. He therefore refused to send her any considerable present, as he was urged to do by her ministers, and contented himself by sending messages of deep respect, intimating
that he had a rich present to offer as soon as he was received in audience. He adopted this course because he was credibly informed that she had received rich Chinese merchants on several occasions.

His obstinacy had the desired effect, and one day a message was brought to him that he would be received that evening by the Great Queen. Preparations were therefore immediately made for the visit. The present, consisting of samples of all the merchandise which they had to dispose of, two fine large elephant's tusks and several bags of spices and pepper, was given in charge of ten African slaves, who when they landed from the Queen's royal barges, which were sent to fetch them, marched in procession guarded by twice as many matchlockmen and headed by James Neccy in a rich dress, with John Smith as his interpreter. Some more of the officers also went with their Admiral to the Queen's palace, where they were received first by her Chamberlains, and hospitably regaled with a very elaborate meal of rice and many tiny dishes of meat, fish and vegetables, cooked with spices and pungent herbs. After this they were served with a warm liquor in cups, which they were given to understand was made by scalding some dried leaves in water, the leaves being procured from the Chinese merchants, who habitually drank it with their meals. When this was finished, the materials for chewing pepper leaves smeared with slaked lime, and taken together with a sort of astringent nut, were passed round, and the business of the visit was discussed whilst they masticated this useful digestive, which the Admiral had learned to appreciate whilst staying with the King of Johor.

Some considerable delay, and a great deal of talking as to the proper etiquette to be observed, took place before the Queen was prepared to receive them. The Chamberlains
were very anxious that the white men should do homage in the same way as they made the Chinese, which was by crawling into the presence and at intervals stopping and lifting their hands in adoration; but James Neccy refused to do this, and after much journeying to and fro between the outer hall of the Palace, where they had been entertained, and the inner chamber, where they were to be received, this point was waived. Then came the question of a salute by firing cannon. This the Admiral, sorry as he was to waste his gunpowder, agreed to, chiefly because he thought the noise of the guns would greatly enhance his own dignity and also serve to awe the people; but when the Chamberlain urged that he should fire fifty rounds, being one for each year of the Queen's life, he demurred, and finally it was settled that he was to fire fourteen rounds, being one for each year of her reign, the first and last rounds to be fired from the long gun on board the Peter Asmodeus, and the others from the culverins. This knotty point having been settled, a messenger had to be sent off to the ships, to order the firing to start as soon as a shot was heard from a matchlock in front of the Palace.

All these delays were rather trying to the patience; but the Admiral, who anticipated great profits from his trading in this new field of adventure, and who also was most anxious to secure a favourable reception for his protégé, John Smith, willingly submitted to the inconvenience. They laughed very heartily at the tawdry, not to say dirty, appearance of the Palace, which was merely a series of large palm-thatched houses, joined together by broad covered ways, with wooden walls and floors composed of split palm tree trunks, over which was a mat of split bamboo. This floor was so slight and, apparently, insecure, that at the outset the visitors made no trouble at all about taking off
their heavy boots in accordance with the request of the Palace officers, for they were actually afraid to wear them for fear of breaking through the floor.

At last everything was arranged, and the procession started from the receptionhall at the first roar of "Young Anna". They slowly traversed three other halls and passage-ways until they came to the audience chamber and into the presence of this mighty Queen, who exacted twice as much ceremonious attention as the King of Johor, who ruled a much larger and more important country. They found the august lady seated on a small square mattress, elevated only a few inches off the floor; while grouped behind her were several women and girls; and in two lines down either side of the hall were seated her officers of state.

The dresses of the Queen and all her people were particularly handsome, being made of the brightest silks, and the handles and sheathes of the men’s weapons, krises and daggers, were of gold. There were also many gold articles in the way of drinking vessels, cuspidons and richly-ornamented weapons reverently held by the officers near the Queen, and boxes for the chewing materials, without which it was impossible for a Malay to move a hundred yards, be he prince or peasant; and to crown all, over the Queen’s head was suspended a not very clean canopy. The lady herself was middle-aged, rather fat, but fairly comely, having a benevolent expression, which was not belied by her speech, when she spoke, as she did so soon as her visitors were seated on mats spread for them before her throne.

First the presents designed for her were displayed to their best advantage, and she made a careful examination of them, showing a very considerable knowledge of the quality of the stuffs, and comparing them not very favourably with the material supplied by her Chinese merchants. She
was, however, very pleased indeed with the glass beads, buttons and other ornaments provided, declaring that they were much superior to the jade ornaments which she had obtained from China, or the precious stones from Siam and Burma. But what pleased her most of all was an elaborately-ornamented wheel-lock dag or pistol. This she immediately ordered to be loaded and fired in her presence; and John Smith having explained to her the action of it, she passed it over to her chief executioner, remarking that it would serve to kill malefactors with.

After the presents had been sufficiently discussed, James Neccy, through his interpreter, asked formal permission to be allowed to trade in the Queen's dominions for a month; and if at the end of that time the Queen considered that it was to her advantage and to the advantage of her people, he proposed to leave his agent, John Smith, in Patani for perhaps a year or two, in order to establish a regular trading station there, which he and other Dutch merchants would keep supplied with articles useful to the people, to be exchanged for the produce of the country.

The Queen was very pleased that this should be done, declaring that she herself would become a partner in the business, and that the agent should have a house built for him at once, close to her Palace walls, so that his goods should be safe. She also promised to provide him with servants and watchmen as her share of the speculation; and as to a wife, if he was not able to choose one he liked from the girls who would undoubtedly at once offer themselves, she would find him one from her own family. This last proposition, made by the Queen quite as if it was a natural part of the business, was rather startling to John Smith, who had with some difficulty arranged that the little savage dwarf, Mesah, should return to her own country
when the ships went home, and who was not thinking of linking himself in another alliance again so soon. With this the audience ended, and after accepting from the Queen's hands some "siri" for chewing, the Admiral and his party withdrew, well contented with the result; except that in John Smith's case the matter of the threatened wife was a little embarrassing.

After about a month's stay at this place, the Admiral, with all his ships, sailed for Siam, leaving his agent established in a convenient house close to the Palace. The fleet did not return again to Patani until two months had elapsed, having had a most successful time in Siam, where they got rid of nearly all their merchandise in exchange for pepper and many precious stones. The Admiral was now ready to return to Europe, and what little of the original merchandise was left was entrusted to John Smith to dispose of at the best advantage he could, and it was agreed that he should stay at Patani, if possible, until James Neccy should return to the East and bring him away, but if the Admiral himself did not return, or if he found it difficult to stay at Patani, he was to charter either a native ship or a Chinese junk to take him to Johor, whence he would without doubt soon get a passage home, Johor being sometimes visited by Dutch merchants.

He was to aim at reducing the merchandise in bulk as much as possible, by judicious exchange, so that ultimately his trading should all resolve itself into the acquirement of gold, either coined or as gold dust, and thus he would be in a position to move about without much inconvenience.

The expedition as a whole had so far been very successful; a large amount of money and a fine ship had been acquired by a lucky chance; much very valuable cargo had been obtained by legitimate trading and by the conquest
of an aggressive and savage enemy; the inevitable loss of life by disease and in fighting had been replaced by valuable slaves, and by men who had elected to desert the Portuguese flag in favour of the Dutch, and the extra cargo space in the great ship captured from the Portugals had been nearly filled with pepper and spices, in spite of the monopoly in that commodity claimed by the King of Portugal.

The Admiral considered that he would be able to complete his lading at Johor; but, if he failed to do so, he would put into the Perak River and get some more tin. He would also, if circumstances seemed to warrant it, put in at Ceylon, Algoa and the Quanza River, at all of which places he might hope to get cargo, at the same time that he provisioned and watered his ships.

Not the least useful result of his voyage was the chain of calling-places which he had established, and the friendly relations which he had entered into with the natives; for the good work done in this direction would give him a very powerful voice on the board of the new company of merchants, which, he expected, was by this time formed, or at least only awaiting his return from the East to come into existence.

And so commending John Smith to the kind keeping of Providence, they sailed out of the mouth of the Patani River, leaving him, a solitary white man, in a city the population of which was half professedly friendly Malays, and the other half Chinese, who, to say the least of it, were rival traders and not too well disposed towards him.
CHAPTER XVII.

Sadly John Smith watched the ships out of sight. He confesses in his journal that if it were not for very shame he would have re-embarked his merchandise and gone with them; and a letter to his mother, sent home by the Admiral's hand, shows that he was afraid he had done a foolish thing in trusting himself to the unknown chances of an indefinite sojourn alone with these people, who, friendly as they might appear at first, and when he was under the protection of the guns and power of the four great ships in the river, would perhaps alter their minds now that he was alone and unprotected, and all his valuable property was to be had for the taking.

Small wonder was it that, in spite of his endeavours to distract his thoughts by arranging and making inventories of his goods, deep depression gradually stole over him, and before he had been alone a week he fell sick of a bad attack of fever and ague. In vain did the Queen do her best to awaken him from his state of lethargy, by urging him to commence to trade. Every day she either went to his house or had him conducted to her own presence, and took the kindliest interest in his health, supplying him with remedies of the most incongruous descriptions, all warranted to be infallible by her medicine men, although she herself insisted that the only true and certain remedy was for him to take to wife one, or even two, of the many damsels who
offered themselves for his delectation. But he would have none of them. He was too miserable and enervated in mind, as well as body, to care for such things. It was in vain that the Queen had the prettiest girls searched for, and persuaded, them to offer themselves to him, for he would not even glance at their bared charms, while their timidly amorous glances only disgusted him, and the insidious whisperings of the kind old Queen, who urged him to take this or that beautifully-formed and warm-tinted girl to his arms, for his comfort, made his headache even worse than it did before.

He religiously doctored himself by chewing the bitter Jesuit's bark, which he, like all travellers of those times, was never without, for it was even then considered the most efficacious remedy for fever; and this perhaps saved his life, or perhaps, after all, the kind nursing of the good old Queen did it. At any rate John Smith himself gives quite as much credit to one as the other, for he evidently was in the greatest danger for some time.

There is an interval in his diary about this time of over six weeks. For some days the entries are hardly intelligible on account of their incoherency and the poorness of the writing, until at last, on the fourth of March, 1603, the climax is reached, and the astounding statement is found that "two horrible black and ugly she-devils had commenced to feed on him and had gnawed all the flesh off his face, snorting and breathing fire from their nostrils as they buried their teeth in his flesh"; at least this is so far as could be understood from the blurred and uncertain writing.

The next entry is dated the 24th April. It is sufficiently coherent, and perhaps explains the delusion under which he was labouring when he last wrote in his diary. He says that he awoke to consciousness two days before, and at first imagined that he was in the Paradise of the Prophet
Mohamad, and that two houris were ministering to him; but soon he realised that he was an inhabitant of this earth, and that the feeling of ethereal buoyancy which pervaded him, resulted from the fact that he was free from the pain of the dreadful headaches which had rendered him unconscious and unable to define his surroundings, except through the distorted focus of the most horrible nightmare. But he was so thin and weak that he could not move his body, owing to the pressure of many thicknesses of silk coverlets under which he lay, and which, together with the warm embraces of two beautiful damsels, had induced the flow of sweat which was driving the fever out of his system. Truly it was no wonder that he thought he had realised "Shurga" at last, when he met the smiling faces which welcomed him back to consciousness.

The wise old Queen perhaps heard from reverend Haji how the physicians tried to restore vitality to the moribund Nabi Daud, and had thought the prescription worth a trial. At any rate her patient was inclined to attribute his cure as much to the Queen's medicine as to his own; and there was no further difficulty in persuading him to take wives of the people of the country, according to the Queen's wish.

But oh! the joy of convalescence! many pages of his diary does he devote to describing his feelings and experiences during the month after he awoke again to a knowledge of life. It is like the happy recital by a mother of her baby's developing powers, and seems at first sight unworthy of a grown man. One almost marvels that he left it in his diary for other people to read, after he had fully regained his strength and mental faculties.

He minutely describes the pleasure he felt when he first realised that he could taste the flavour of fruits, and the feeling of extraordinary strength which seemed to surge
through him after slowly swallowing a small cup of chicken broth; while it only provokes in him an amused feeling and no disappointment to find that, whereas he thought the acquired strength would certainly carry him for a walk the length of the house, it scarcely served to allow him to stand upright.

Then the exquisite delight of repose which was induced when his handmaidens sponged his body with warm water, in which some fragrant herbs had been steeped, and gently assisted him to a fresh couch, after he had laid languidly perspiring away the remnants of the fever. And when at last he was able to be dressed in the easy garments of the country, and walked with assistance down to the river, where, lying on a brightly-decorated mat, supported by luxurious cushions, he inhaled the fresh warm breezes from the sea, he breaks out into a rhapsody of thankfulness to beneficent Nature for the goodness of the world and the sweet delight of living. Quickly, then, his strength returns to him, every day his walks get longer and longer, and his ambition urges him to test his strength by exercising his body, — which has, to his mind, acquired a new youthfulness, — by rapier play, until at last he can lunge as actively, and every time deliver his point at full stretch within a circle of less than an inch in diameter, execute his reposte and flaconade, and spring his demi-voltes and his voltes as alertly as he did when he was a recognised master of fence in England and Holland.

Following the advice of his clever doctress, he made a habit of going with the fishing fleet out to sea every third day, and this also did much to invigorate him, not only by inhaling the fresh salt air, but by providing his mind with a healthy excitement. Much has he written of the strange and beautiful fish which were caught, and very
learnedly does he discourse of the rival merits of the *ekan merah* and the *ekan lang*, of the boniness of the *ekan parang* and of the delicious roe of the *ekan terbu*. And then the rush and scramble of rival boats to get in first to the market, and the beauty of the scene as the crowd of sails seem to fly up the river on the incoming tide, with a fair wind from the sea.

All these things quickly restored him to his usual health, and the gratitude which he felt in his heart towards the good Queen, who not only nursed him back to life, but also to an appreciation of the delight of living, easily reconciled him to the prospect of a long stay in the country.

The Queen's fondness for her guest also increased, as such attachments always do when a motherly woman has successfully nursed a patient through a severe illness. She gave him the title of "Dato' Dagang", or Minister of Immigrants, thus making him the *Aloran Sembah*, or Presenter of Petitions, through whom all strangers were authorised to lay their business before the Throne.

This appointment caused no ill-feeling amongst her subjects, as in a Malay state it is always held by a prominent stranger, who might be expected to encourage the immigration of his own countrymen to the State. The office, though not entitling the holder to a regular salary, is a very profitable one in the hands of a shrewd Malay, who would know how to exact payment in recompense for assistance given to strangers. Needless to say that John Smith did not personally get any direct benefit from it, although Chinese merchants and others learned to look to him for assistance, and were not disappointed.

It was the durien season, and, in accordance with custom, the Queen and all her household prepared to go up country for two weeks holiday, to feast on the fruit. The royal elephants were, after much difficulty and delay, brought in
from their feeding places, twenty-four great beasts of burthen, some of them easy of temper and docile, but others with every disposition to make matters uncomfortable, and even dangerous, for their loads of pretty girls. It was the first time that John Smith had ever ridden on an elephant, and it took him a little while to get used to the hard seat on the rough cane basket which served for a saddle. It could not by any stretch of courtesy be called a howdah. He had to sit perched in a corner of this uncomfortable affair in as little space as possible, cross-legged and cramped, fearing that at every lurch of his clumsy steed he would be thrown to the ground. The, Queen’s beast was the only one which carried a properly constructed and covered howdah, in which she sat in solitary grandeur. The rest were supplied with the rough, open, double baskets, which were used to carry loads, and which made but indifferent seats.

John Smith had long since discarded his trunk hose and tight doublet: they were impossible garments for such an expedition and for the life he now led amongst the natives; and except for the colour of his skin and his greater height, he would have passed well for a native, as he not only wore their dress, but, so far as he knew how, imitated their habits and speech.

Each elephant was allotted to a member of the Queen’s household, or to some favoured guest, who was allowed to bring not more than two of his wives and one unmarried girl, a relation of his house, while the bachelors were made to travel on foot. These expeditions were always looked upon as especially good opportunities for match-making, and one of the chief games indulged in was for the young men to change places with the gambalas, or elephant drivers, in order to carry on flirtations, not always, as John Smith soon discovered, of the most innocent description, with the girls.
Indeed, he realised before he had been very long in the country, that whereas the virtue of married women was very strictly looked after, and any lapse therefrom punished with death, the sentence being carried into effect by the fathers of the guilty man and woman, unmarried girls were allowed the utmost degree of liberty as to their conduct, without any fear of punishment or of even shocking the conventionalities. Chastity with them would be considered absurd, for children of nature as they were, the idea of refraining from the indulgence of their instinctive desires, in order to meet the convention of a religious system, was far beyond their capabilities. Good Mohamadans as they professed to be, the Arabian teachers who tried to force them to a stricter code of moral ethics were fain to accept this, as well as many other customs of the country which they could not alter in conformity with the Law of the Prophet, with the best grace they could, and call it all halal, or lawful.

It was like a party of youths and maidens going a-maying, this expedition into the forest to eat duriens, and the stranger, whose lot was cast with them, felt like a boy not yet out of his teens in his enjoyment of the games indulged in by the young men and damsels, to say nothing of the more staid and responsible heads of families, and even the great Queen herself, who laid aside her dignity for the time, and played with her people.

She called up John Smith's elephant close to her own, pretending that she wished to consult him about a camping place for the night; and then, as he approached, suddenly the sides of her howdah were thrown open, and it was seen that she had taken up three young and beautiful girls, who commenced to pelt his party with berries and fruits of the forest which they had collected. So amidst
screams of laughter and delight at his endeavours to screen himself from the shower of missiles, they so drubbed him that he was forced to seek safety in flight.

This was the signal for a general engagement; the elephants were goaded to excitement, and dashes were made into the forest to find suitable berries and fruit for ammunition. Fierce old war captains and staid and reverend Hajis joined in the game of war as joyously as the laughing girls and young wives, and many a young man, following the elephants on foot, earned the promise of a sweet recompense from the girl of his desire, in exchange for a supply of ammunition, adroitly thrown up to her, when she and her party were hard pressed and in want of it.

And so they frolicked on through the gloomy and cool forest and over open fields of coarse grass, the scene of the spasmodic agriculture of the forest tribes, following sometimes the dry bed of a stream and at other regular elephant tracks, connecting villages and orchards, or leading to some famous pool in the river. Thus they travelled from early morning to noon, when they prepared a camp, either beside a river, or on the edge of an orchard of durien trees. If they camped by a stream, the young men would set to work to bruise between stones a certain root, of which a supply was carried. The juice of this root when thrown into the water had the effect of stupifying the fish, and of making them rise to the surface; and then, when it had been immersed for a short time in the stream above a pool known to be full of fish, and when they began to rise and flounder about on the surface, with a shout men and women would take to the water, swimming and diving after the finny tribe, almost as if they also were denizens of the rivers; and soon the banks of the river were dotted with busy groups of women, cleaning and splitting the catch
ready to broil over the hot cinders of their fires, whilst the young men prepared sheds and arbours thatched with palm leaves, for the night's accommodation.

The next night they would camp by an orchard where the durien fruit was ripe and fast dropping with resounding thuds to the ground. Woe to the unlucky youth who should by chance be hit by a falling fruit, for if he escaped with his life he might thank his stars. It was no joke to be underneath and to have a heavy fruit as big as a man's head, armed with hard points all over it, fall on one from a branch fifty or sixty feet from the ground; such accidents did happen sometimes, and with fatal results.

And then, when a lot of duriens were collected, they sat down to feast, until they were helpless with repletion. John Smith soon got over the feeling of repulsion which the first acquaintance with the fruit always fills newcomers to the country; the especially foetid odour, and the spicy, aromatic flavour of the creamy pulp, seemed a part of the warm, sensuous life of the tropical forest, and completed the charm of the lotus-eating and irresponsible evenings which they spent in the gloomy shade, serving as a foil and enjoyable contrast to the energetic and strenuous fun of the camps on the river bank, when everybody was so thoroughly tired out that they were asleep almost before they had time to crawl into their leafy arbours.

For more than a fortnight they thus travelled about the country, and then they returned to the town of Patani, near the mouth of the river, to their usual avocations there. The journey had been of the greatest value to our merchant, not only in showing him how to travel and arrange his affairs according to the habits of the people, but also by introducing him to the chiefs as a favoured protégé of the Queen, who, he found, was very deeply reverenced by her people.
CHAPTER XVIII.

John Smith found on his return a letter from the Admiral, who had sent it from Johor by one of the King's trading prahus. It was written just before the fleet left Johor on its homeward voyage, and he was thus unable to send a reply to it. The Admiral wrote that, except for a severe storm which had done some little damage to his ships, he had had a fairly successful voyage so far, having succeeded in getting some more valuable cargo, and finally agreeing with King Regale of Johor to return in two years time with a force strong enough to attack Malacca in conjunction with him, and with authority to conclude a formal treaty with him.

The kindly old Admiral wrote much in the way of encouragement to his young friend, and promised that, directly he returned to Johor, he would send either one of his own ships, or if that was impossible, a King's prahu to Patani to fetch him and all his property to Johor, in time to join the expedition to Malacca which, he felt sure, the Dutch Government would authorise, in furtherance of the interests of the Company which was being formed.

John Smith now spent some weeks in quiet trading and in making friends with the merchants from Siam and China, as well as in exercising his powers and fulfilling the duties appertaining to his post of Dato' Dagang which he found, if he was to act conscientiously, were by no means light
and unimportant. All disputes between the foreigners who frequented the port and the natives were referred to him. It was his business also to see that the ships were allowed proper moorings. There was no specified salary attached to his appointment, but it was recognised that he might make what he could out of it.

The Royal Treasurer first collected an export duty of ten per cent and an import duty of equal value on all goods, and not all of this went to the Queen’s treasury, it is to be feared. Sundry other officials also collected small amounts for services, or at least what they said were services, rendered, although in point of fact, it might rather be said that they exacted payment by dint of threats of violence and trade hinderance, if the payments were not forthcoming.

John Smith was more honest than this, and scarcely required to ask for payment for the substantial help which he gave, and thus got to be very friendly with the foreign merchants, albeit at the cost of a little animosity from the native chiefs, whose system differed from his.

The Queen, who through her agents, the girls of her household, easily learned all that was going on, at least in her capital town, soon saw that she had a valuable officer in the white man, and proposed to him to give him a more important post; even going so far as to hint that, if he would become a Mohamadan she would take him for her husband, and as she was getting on in years, would show no jealousy if he exercised the privilege of all good followers of the Prophet, and had other younger wives besides, plainly declaring that her idea was not so much a passionate longing for him, as a wish to advance him and, at the same time, the well-being of her kingdom. This proposed kindness rather overpowered John Smith, and he has recorded his
thoughts on the subject at some considerable length; carefully weighing, first the material benefit of such an alliance, against the possible dangers in which it might involve him, and then the spiritual aspect of apostacy, balancing the merits of the Cross against the Crescent.

It seemed very certain that, if he allied himself to the Queen, he would incur the enmity of all the great chiefs of the country, and it might almost be taken for granted that they would intrigue for his downfall, even if they did not make certain of getting rid of him altogether. Murder was of almost daily occurrence in the city, and was so little thought of, that even the spectacle of the dead body of a white man in the street some morning would not shock people to an enormous extent. It was the fashion to attribute such mischances to fate, and the expression, “Hukum sudah sampei”, meaning that the unlucky man had met his ordained fate, was considered quite sufficient reason for such a death, unless some busy-body should think it worth while to make enquiry, when perhaps the murderer, if caught, would be fined a certain weight of smelted tin, and be ordered to provide a buffalo and some rice for a reconciliation feast between himself and the relatives of the murdered man; or it might be that he would be ordered to give a live slave in exchange for the life he had taken. These Mohamadan Malays, whilst they were sticklers for the old Mosaic law of a life for a life, and the rest of it, were not so wasteful as to kill a man because he had killed another, and thus lose two subjects of the State at one coup: that was not their reading of the Law. A man was part, first, of the assets of the State, and secondly, an item of value to his clan and family; and if the State was reimbursed by the recovery of half the fine imposed, the State was satisfied. The clan and family were, for the same reason, more contented
with the other half of the fine, or perhaps a live and able-bodied slave, than they would have been with an equal weight of carrion. That was the Law and the Prophets, and was reasonable as well, in Malay estimation. True, sometimes an irresistible and foolish desire for vengeance would stir up an avenger of blood, and then one murder would lead to many; but this was not often the case, unless the aggrieved clan was not strong enough to enforce the payment of the fine ordered by the Judge. There was another phase of the material side of the question which he gave his careful consideration to; and that was his domestic arrangements. He was very well contented with his life as it was: his two young wives were affectionate and attentive to him; they were not jealous, the one of the other; nor was there any cause for jealousy, for their husband — or as the fashion of the time and place decreed it, their master, — was equally fond of both of them. They were by no means meek and gentle creatures, for they ruled the house with much spirit and with a great deal of cleverness, nor did they spare their master altogether, often forcing him to obey their behests against his own judgement, but doing it with so much playfulness and acumen that he seemed to be following more his own inclination than their orders. And then, when it is remembered that they were amongst the most beautiful and highly-connected young ladies of the country, it may be guessed that John Smith was not disposed to take even the great Queen herself into his harem, full of gratitude towards her though he felt, and fond of her as he was, but with an affection more filial than lover-like.

The two young ladies who already shared his affections so amiably, when they found out, as they very soon did, what was taking place, also strongly advised him to refuse the honour; and they did so quite disinterestedly, for they
declared themselves to be quite willing that he should take other and younger wives, but said they, "If you marry the Queen, every chief in the country will be envious, and envy soon unsheathes the kris."

John Smith was not a bigoted Christian. He had carefully examined the articles of faith in Jesus of Nazareth as the Christ, both from the point of view of Rome and also as a Protestant, and he found in the broadest Christianity something wanting, some more evidence necessary. Like Thomas he almost thought that, before the dogmas enunciated by the Teachers could be accepted, he must actually see and feel the wounded side. He would not allow himself to absolutely drift away from the religion of his race, but it is plain from his writings that his faith was weak, and his hope not altogether steadfast. Charity, on the other hand, abounded in him to an overwhelming degree, for he loved his neighbours, meaning not only all mankind, but also all animated nature, with a comprehensive and absorbing passion which often led him into eccentricities that surprised his friends. He was a good fighter, and loved to fight in what he considered a legitimate cause, but in the midst of the hottest quarrel his impulse always led him rather to bind up wounds than to inflict them; and it grieved him less to lose his substance than to forfeit the affection of his friends; so perhaps his Christianity was saved by his charity after all.

He had carefully read and had expounded to him the Koran of Mohamad, the Prophet of Islam, and in his heart he approved of it, except its dogmas. He found its precepts as worthy of acceptance as the lessons of the Christian testaments, and certainly more adaptable to human life in the tropics, where the people are more childlike and under the sway of the emotions and natural cravings, than are the inhabitants of colder climes. After careful study of the
religions, and the methods of their exponents in all ages, he could only determine to himself that Christianity and Islam were each of them but paraphrases of the same great code of law and morality, the first enunciation of which is attributed to Moses, or Musa, one of the greatest leaders of men the world has ever held.

Of what avail is it to argue as to the greater efficacy of baptism by water or circumcision? Both rites are only symbols of the entry of a child into religious life.

Why argue for polygamy or monogamy? The rich man and the strong arm in every creed will always, if it pleases him to do so, possess a larger harem than his poorer and weaker brother, even although he may with his lips declare that to do so is immoral; and even polyandry, either as an institution or as a secret indulgence is not so very rare, showing that, with both sexes, no tenets of religion, nor any teaching of moral or legal codes, is of avail, as against the promptings of the passions in the natural healthy body.

Who shall say that the religious sects of Christianity are more blood-thirsty in the propagation of their diversified creeds than the Mohamadans? Is there any difference between a crusade and a Jehad? Was the spread of Crescent in India by the first Mughal emperors carried on with greater cruelty than the Inquisition was using at the very time John Smith was writing his diaries?

And as to the Sectarian differences in both great religions, he could find nothing to discriminate between the quarrels and sanguinary contests of Romanists against Protestants and Sunis against Shias.

The world of men and women, given the leadership of eloquent preachers to gather followers into antagonistic camps, teaching Faith in an Abstraction as a matter of vital importance to the human race, but teaching it from two
different lines of thought, is ever ready to shed blood and sacrifice human life in the upholding of the efficacy of a superstition to insure either happiness in the natural life, or bliss in a super-natural life. And for such matters will the peoples fight to the death, although the very tenets of the religions for which they fight inculcate peace and charity and love for one another as their leading principles.

John Smith doubted whether the simple religion of sanitary cleanliness and improvement of the breed of the tribe, which he found on the Quanza River in Dongo land, was not perhaps better, as being more in accord with Nature and free from the element of dogma. One day, by chance, when he was in Johor and wandering about King Regale's city, he had come upon an ancient Haji, evidently an Arabian, who professed to be teaching a few disciples the real tenets of the Islamic faith. He listened to his preaching, but at first was only disgusted by the coarse sensuality of the symbols the old man used to explain the points and doctrines which he wished to elucidate; but when he had heard him through; and had come to understand the creed which he upheld, "La-Alla-ha-illa-lah, Aku Allah, ya Allah Aku, Alla-Hu Aku," "God is one God, I am God, God is Me, I am God the victorious", he pondered the matter greatly in his mind, and comparing it with much that he remembered of the writings of religious teachers of all ages, he almost thought that here was a universal first principle, which might reconcile all conflicting arguments into one Pantheon acceptable to the whole world; and thus would be eliminated the greatest factor for discord which prevailed and torn the human race in an endless embroglio of turbulent strife and bloodshed in the name of peace, love and good-will.

With these thoughts in his mind, John Smith might reasonably be considered capable of changing his religion from
Christianity to Islamism without much straining of his conscience; but he could not bring his mind to do it under any circumstances. Illegitimate child of such an incongruous attachment as he knew himself to be, the frivolous and gay nature which he had inherited in a slight degree from his actress mother was dominated in him by the earnest Christianity of love and charity — err though it did, and fail him before the fascination and seduction of the actress, — which his father, the priest, possessed and passed on to him. This leaven of earnestness would not allow him lightly to change in himself that which had become a habit of life earlier than his mother's teaching. The preceptors to whom she gave him in charge had moulded his mind to an unconscious belief in a certain formula, and he felt that to preserve that belief he would undoubtedly throw away his own life, although he just as certainly would do nothing to try and induce another human mind to accept the same faith, even if it were the mind of his own child.

On the two counts of material benefit and spiritual change, he decided that he could not become the good Queen's consort, and as tenderly and affectionately as possible he made her understand this, and also that he was not in any way desirous of increasing the number of the inmates of his harem. However, she was so little offended at his denial of herself, that she offered to provide him with more young ladies if he wished for them.
CHAPTER XIX.

For some months after this momentous matter was settled, John Smith lived an interesting and successful life, attending to his official duties and, as opportunity offered, bartering his inexpensive stuffs and cheap ornaments for produce of the country, chiefly tin and gold. The gold he kept; it was the ultimate aim and object of his trading; but the tin he passed on again to the Chinese merchants, getting in exchange rich silks and other miscellaneous articles with which he traded again, turning over his stock many times; and as he was never anxious to hurry business, he was able to command profits, which merchants who came in ships and only waited for a short time in the port, could not hope for.

The Queen, who had considerable interests in tin mining in the interior, was most anxious that he should go up the river and spend some time visiting her mines, so that he could tell her whether she was being fairly treated by her agents, and also to suggest any improvements in the system of working which he considered advisable.

At this time there were several small states dependent on Patani, and it was customary for the princes governing them to come once in every three years to Patani to do homage to the Queen as their overlord; and when they were assembled, there was always one particular matter to be discussed which caused some quarrelling; this was the homage which the King of Siam exacted once every three years from Patani.
Siam was a very powerful state, and laid claim to most of the Peninsula. True, she did nothing to enforce her claim, and except for sometimes taking sides in the wars which were continually being waged between rival states in the southern half of the Peninsula, she was hardly known there. It was different, however, in the northern half, where she insisted on a tribute being paid to her. This took the form of an ornament made of gold and silver, which was forwarded once every three years with much ceremony. A carefully selected envoy was always intrusted with the mission from Patani, and most minute directions were given to him as to his behaviour and policy when in Siam. The Queen was for John Smith to undertake this mission, but she was persuaded by her Counsellors that he was too young and inexperienced in intrigue to be trusted with such a delicate matter; and in fact he did not wish it himself, for he felt sure that if by chance any mistake or contretemps occurred, he would be blamed, and his enemies would use it to his disadvantage. He therefore contented himself with being a looker-on only of the preparations for the dispatch of the mission, which took place soon after the tributary princes had done homage.

These princes, heads of the small states called Legeh, Jering, Sai, Jalor and Telubin, as usual had much to say about the form of message and the value of the gold and silver flower of tribute to be sent. They did not see the use of it, and urged that the Queen should boldly declare herself independent of Siam; threatening indeed, that if she did not, they would follow the example of the Prince of Raman, and enter into alliance with, or become vassals of, the King of Perak, who had some time before refused to send an embassy with tribute to the King of Siam.

Perak had vacillated a good deal in this matter, some-
times acknowledging her vassalage and at others repudiating it; and the small inland state of Raman, having no seaboard to tempt a Siamese naval commander to harry, escaped altogether the obligation of contributing towards an embassy, by transferring her allegiance from Patani to Perak. But then, as John Smith found out, the people of Raman had overstepped their boundaries, and taking advantage of unoccupied territory, had migrated two or three generations before into the Perak watershed, and had there established themselves, in spite of efforts on the part of Perak to dislodge them.

The particular reason why the King of Perak had on this occasion refused to send an embassy to Siam, was a demand made by the latter for the delivery of a white elephant, which was said to be roaming the Perak forests. Now white elephants had been from time immemorial especial adjuncts of the Royalty of Siam, for it had been a tradition that, wherever discovered in the world, they were the property of the King of Siam. This tradition, and the endeavours of the Siamese to give it effect, by laying claim to every specimen as it was discovered, had often led to serious quarrels, and even war, with their neighbours of Pegu, and the states of Burma and India beyond, who did not quite see the force of thus acknowledging Siam's right to claim an animal the denizen of forests which did not appertain to Siam. There was another thing about this white elephant which complicated matters a great deal. The animal, according to tradition, need not necessarily be white, but he must be a beast having certain points or characteristics which marked him out from the rest of the herd as extraordinary. Amongst these points one was that he should have six toes on each foot, and another, that when standing on level ground, the tip of his trunk and the tip of his tail
should reach the ground. It may be imagined, therefore, that a great deal of ambiguity arose as to the exactness of the demands of Siam, namely, that a white elephant which was running at large in the forests of Perak, should forthwith be captured and delivered up.

The matter had been under discussion now for nearly four years, and nothing had come of it, at least nothing satisfactory to Siam. Perak had denied that there was such an animal, or if there were, she required Siam to at least point it out, if not catch it. Then Perak said that the animal talked of was not a real white elephant. So its points were combatted one by one, until it did not appear to have a leg to stand on, a tail to swish, or a trunk worth considering: it was a myth, a hantu, or ghost; and finally, if there were such an elephant in the forest, the pawangs, or medicine men, all declared that it must be kramat (sacred), and on no account to be interfered with, save at the risk of awful calamities befalling the State.

The King of Perak and his chiefs thus evaded the question for three or four years, until the failure of Siam to enforce her demands by invading the country, or taking some other strong measures to compel obedience, ultimately destroyed her prestige, so that the Perak chiefs refused to do homage, or pay the triennial tribute of an ornamental tree with silver leaves and golden fruit; and Raman eagerly declared herself vassal to Perak in preference to Patani.

This had made Patani's other vassals restive and inclined to revolt, but the astute old Queen was too clever to let them fall away. She declared that if other and more peaceable means failed to bring back the Prince of Raman to his allegiance, she would not hesitate to go to war with Perak and at least reconquer Raman, with the territory which her subjects had colonised, if she did not actually lower Perak's
pride by taking more territory from her. Then again, as she pointed out to her vassals, she was much nearer to Siam than Perak and more open to attack, so it behoved her to be wary. Siam had for some time been in alliance with Portugal, and had acquired many muskets and some heavy artillery; whereas she and her people, up to now, were chiefly armed with javelins and the bows of the wild Semangs. She drew on her imagination a little and declared that she was in treaty with the other sort of white men, represented by John Smith, and that through them she would shortly be supplied with as many matchlocks as she wanted; then, when her army was strong enough, she would think about Siam’s claim to be her overlord, as well as some other matters which she and her faithful allies might enquire into. There was the rich city of Sengora for instance, which had lately dared to assert herself as a rival of Patani, and might therefore merit some slight rebuff, to teach her a lesson.

In the meantime her friend, the white man, had asked to be allowed to present each of the princes with a matchlock, in token of the friendship which his nation felt for hers; and for her part, there were five young and beautiful ladies, daughters of chiefs, who were dependent on her and lived in her house: these young ladies had each of them fallen desperately in love with one of her faithful allies, and nothing would content them but speedy marriage to the men of their choice. And thus, with many cajoleries and much flattery, the good Queen brought her vassals to a proper sense of their dependence on her, and withal saddled them each with a bride who had been trained under her own eye as a perfect spy and a clever secret agent, and who would keep her mistress well informed of every slight change in the political atmosphere of the small court to which she was sent;
and moreover, she would, incidentally to her duties in that direction, bring up children to be loyal vassals of Patani.

And so the vassal princes, provided with brand new brides, soon became contented with their own importance, and they admired the astuteness of their great Queen in obtaining an alliance with this other sort of white men, who were at enmity with the arrogant Feringhes of Malacca. They soon felt inclined to pity the Prince of Raman for his folly in throwing off his allegiance to such a beneficent ruler; but then the glamour of their brides and the wonderful new guns still held them enthralled, for they were very children, and only just elevated to barbarism from the savagery of their primitive forest clanship, and not the least important lesson they would have to learn from their complacent brides was how to behave when taking their rice and the proper Court etiquette of passing the siri-stand to a guest. As it was, the Abentaras kanan and kiri (Heralds of the right and left hand) had spent some long and anxious hours teaching them how to advance up the long verandah of the Palace, when they were called up to do homage to the great Queen.

It was a great and gorgeous function as described by John Smith, this doing of homage. Preparations had been made which covered over a month of the time before the vassal princes arrived, and then, when every thing was ready, the city gave itself up to another month's pleasure. Buffaloes and goats without number were slaughtered; and not only the Queen, but all her ministers and the rich merchants of the city, vied with one another in giving great feasts and entertainments; so that in many houses, as was the custom to express it, "the noise of the drums and cymbals, the flageolets and the string instruments, and the chanting of the Koran did not cease day and night for the
space between two Fridays." There, a chief's greatness was measured by the number of buffaloes he slaughtered, and the cost of the entertainments he provided for his guests.

The rich Chinese merchants furnished splendidly-dressed theatrical companies of their own people, and gave free performances of ancient dramas, on platforms erected in the open streets. These performances were characterised chiefly by the gorgeous embroidery displayed in the dresses of the actors, by their shrill voices, and most of all, by the incessant clapping of huge brass cymbals with which the dialogue was eked out. The Siamese merchants had presented the Queen with a troupe of Siamese performers equally gorgeous in dress; these played within the precincts of the Palace.

A troupe of acrobats and dancers was also provided by the Queen for the amusement of her guests. They were Peguans from the Mon States, at the mouth of the great river which runs through the Burmese kingdoms into the sea of Bengal. Clever and agile performers and dancers they were, but the ladies of the troupe were regarded by the Patani ladies with considerable disfavour, because their dress was, in the opinion of the latter, far too scanty to be decent. It consisted of a single piece of cloth, or perhaps silk, but always of the most beautiful quality. It was wide enough to reach from the ladies' waists to their knees; but then, as it was only long enough to just go round their waists without being sewn together, and as the largest muscles in the human body, were, amongst the Peguan ladies, particularly well developed, it may be imagined that the wearers, in a high wind, did not appear to be extravagantly clothed, nor were they in difficulties about arranging a train when they sat on the floor; in fact, their appearance was, it seemed, more designed to inflame the hearts of the youth of Patani, than was quite agreeable to the young ladies of that place.
But then, as John Smith remarked, it was altogether a question of the point of view from which modesty and morals were regarded.

In Pegu, young ladies found their charms lightly considered by the young men, and were therefore obliged to assert themselves in the best way they could, or their sex would have been neglected. In Patani, on the other hand, the young ladies led lives which were comparable in their license to the Roman Saturnalia; and it was only after the experience gained by a few years of indulgence, in what we may politely describe as free love, that they settled down to married life and the thoughts of a family. As John Smith writes in his diary, it did seem a little unfair that they should blame the Peguan ladies for immodesty under the circumstances, when, although more carefully clothed, they were themselves so excessively free in their intercourse with the opposite sex, that not one of them was contented to wait for marriage, but must needs reverse the generally accepted order, by first indulging in a term of profligacy and then taking a husband and settling down to the staid cares of bringing up a family.

Verily it seemed even to the citizen of emancipated Europe that these Eastern ladies were more advanced than he hoped ever to see white women, but again he thought that perhaps after all it was not so much a matter of impropriety in the East, as of a slavish adherence to conventionality in the West. For there in Patani, as on the Quanza River in Afrika, and in civilized Europe, Fashion, the all-powerful, had decreed a certain code of morals to be observed in connection with the religion which the people professed; and really, taking it altogether, he considered that perhaps the African savage had adopted the best system of them all, and the one most in accord with the well-being
of the human race. It was a great question, and one which he thought about continually, and which made him fill his journals with speculative theories and eloquent disquisitions. Our friend was evidently at this time going through a phase of considerable religious uncertainty; the only point on which he was quite decided being a profound disgust and contempt for the Portuguese Romanists, whose religion, morals and general treatment of their neighbours he found to be far less satisfactory than even the peculiar ways of the African savages.

After about two weeks of feasting and amusements, the important day for the grand ceremony of doing homage arrived, and the tributary princes, surrounded by groups of their own officers of state, marched with great pomp to the Palace where the ceremony was to take place.

Patani being at this time under the rule of a Queen, some slight alteration in the customary observances of doing homage had to be arranged. It was usual for the vassal to approach the Presence by, as it were, a side entrance, where they were first received by the Palace ladies and some one or more of the chief wives of the King, and were by them regaled with gossip and siri until the time came for them to go into an anteroom and there await the official summons to the Presence, which was given by one of the Heralds in a loud voice, in which he reiterated all the titles and stiles of the vassal lord, and called him to do homage. It was then the duty of the vassal to reply from the anteroom, and commence his progress up the long verandah to the Throne at the top end of it. It was this progress which was the stumblingblock in the career of many an aspirant to the honour of being considered an adept in Court etiquette.

The new customs dependent on the sex of the Ruler of
the State did not tend to help the chiefs much. In the first place, they did not much enjoy doing abject homage to a woman. This difficulty, however, had to a certain extent been overcome by the Queen’s own thoughtfulness, for she had elected not to sit on the throne herself, but on the floor beside it, filling the seat with the insignia of royalty, so that the pride of her chiefs should not be hurt; and instead of making them kiss her hand, — for kiss, John Smith says, we must understand smell — she prepared for each lordly vassal a little packet of siri, ready for chewing. This was very diplomatic of her indeed, for the giving of a chew of siri to a man by a woman amongst the Malays, meant, either that she was in love with him, or that she claimed brotherhood with him; so, however the recipient might choose to translate it to himself, he could not fail to be greatly flattered. But the worst part of the whole ceremony, whether o man or a woman were the occupant of the throne, was the progress up the long verandah; for instead of a Royal lady to receive them and start them on the voyage with a little encouragement, the chiefs found a troupe of laughing girls, amongst them being their own brides and, of course, John Smith’s two wives. These young ladies did all they could to upset the gravity of the proceedings and put the chiefs out of countenance, trying to persuade them to all sorts of queer antics, on the plea that they were the newest fashion, arranging and re-arranging their coats and headdresses for them, until the poor men were beside themselves with nervousness.

The proper way to do homage was for the vassal, as soon as he got out of the anteroom into the long verandah facing the throne, to seat himself on the floor cross-legged, and in that position shuffle up the whole length of the hall to the throne, between a double row of Court officials and
guests of the Court. Three times during this progress he had to stop; once at the far end of the hall, once in the centre, and the third time at the foot of the throne; and at each stoppage it was his duty to give the Royal salute three times. Now this Royal salute, as given by a man, consisted in first closing each hand in the lap, then raising the two fists pressed together to the level of the breast, there opening the hands and pressing the palms together so that the fingers pointed outwards; then, from this position, raising the joined hands to the face until the tips of the thumbs rested on the bridge of the nose, and thence the hands were dropped again to the lap. This manoeuvre was repeated three times.

But the mischievous young ladies started one poor man on his career with the impression that, as it was a Queen and not a King, to whom he was going to do homage, it was proper that he should adopt the deportment and salute appertaining to women; the difference being that, instead of sitting crosslegged, he should sit with his legs doubled back under him; and instead of raising his closed fists from his lap to his breast, he should draw his open hands from his knees right up the length of his thighs and body to the position opposite his face for the salute. Luckily for the perpetrators of this joke, the Chief was told of his mistake at the far end of the hall, after he had done his first salute, where he was hardly within sight of the Queen, and he corrected himself by the time he got to the middle salute, so that the Queen did not really know anything about it at the time, or she would probably have visited her anger pretty severely on somebody, for she was very little disposed to allow such an important function as this doing of homage to be made game of. She knew too well how difficult it was to get her vassals to acknowledge her
overlordship, to run any risk of putting them off by ridicule.

After the vassal princes, the Queen's own ministers, amongst them John Smith, did homage in their turn; after which the day finished with a great feast in the Palace, the performance of a comedy by the Queen's own native players, and some dancing by the girls of the Palace.
CHAPTER XX.

It was not long after this that the vassal chiefs took their departure for their own provinces, to the last urging that there was no necessity to pay tribute to Siam, and that they were quite willing to fight, if the great Queen would make up her mind to refuse to continue the practice. But the Queen knew better; she knew that she was not strong enough to fight, and therefore hurried on her embassy to Siam, with the tribute of a wonderful flower wrought in gold and silver. Nearly all of her counsellors agreed that it was not advisable to come to a disagreement with Siam, and John Smith saw very plainly that, numerous as were the subjects of his patroness, they were far from warlike, preferring rather an easy life of sloth and leaving not only the rice cultivation, but nearly all the trading with Chinese and Siamese merchants to their wives, who were certainly much more capable and enterprising than the men.

The Queen now decided that she wished John Smith to go up river and inspect her tin mines; and also she thought it would be well if he continued his journey right into the State of Raman, and endeavoured by persuasion and some judiciously-placed gifts to induce the Prince and people of that State to return to their allegiance. She recognised that the expedition was not entirely free from danger to her favourite minister, and pointed this out to him, but he was himself most eager to go; and so it was decided that, as so soon as proper preparations could be made, he should start.
He would probably be away five or six months. His young wives were anxious to accompany him, but the Queen forbade it, as it was not an expedition suited for women at all: and so they had to stay behind. The Queen also took charge of all his property, and appointed an officer to fulfil his post as Dato' Dagang.

The Queen also turned her attention to his equipment for the journey, the whole expense of which she, of course, sustained herself. In the first place, two large river prahus were provided, with six men and a steerer for each as crew. It was intended to pole up the river as far as possible, and then to lay up the prahus and proceed overland on foot, taking to the river and the prahus again on the return journey.

Four of the little savages called Semangs were sent as a bodyguard for John Smith, and also to act as hunters and guides for the expedition. These Semangs were looked up to by the Patani people as the original owners of the land, and were always consulted by the Queen in matters of state. They were in reality mere savages, and could easily have been exterminated by the Siamese and Malays, who between them had created the kingdom of Patani, but such a policy was not in accordance with the ways of the East; and long years before, when Siamese and Malays had colonized the rivers and spread, the first from the North and the others from the South, all over the Peninsula, they had recognised the rights of the savages whom they had found on the land, and had conciliated instead of coercing them. They had inter-married with them also, until the typical inhabitant of Patani was one-third Malay, one-third Semang, and one-third Siamese; and it was only by searching deep in the forest that the pure Semang could now be found.

Such were the four men who promised the Queen to guide her minister right through Patani and Raman into
the Perak watershed. They were men of importance amongst their own people, expert woodmen and hunters, and very clever with the bow, with which weapon they were armed. These bows were very different from the little bows and poisoned arrows of the African savages. They reminded John Smith of the formidable bows which were only just going out of fashion in Europe, especially in England. They were nearly as tall as the men who wielded them, and the arrows were very formidable, being over two feet long, and tipped with keen, leaf-shaped iron heads and poisoned. These savages were very simply clothed, as they only wore a strip of cloth made from the bark of a tree, and this they passed between their legs and fastened to a cord which they wore round their waists.

Two Siamese and a Chinese merchant also went with the expedition, intending to buy tin from the miners, if they could get it carried down the river, and also canes and other produce of the forests, for which Patani was a very important mart. There were also four slaves whose duty it was to help generally in the work of the prahus, and who would assist to carry the rice and dried fish, which were the main provisions for the journey.

John Smith, being in the position of a special agent of the Queen, and being empowered to treat with the Prince and people of Raman, was provided with a staff of office, whereby he should be known and his authority recognised. This mark of authority was a peculiar spear, like a trident with one of the points missing. It was called *changi putri*, (Nails of the Princess) and was always sent by the Queen when she intended to bear the responsibility of her minister’s acts and promises.

For twenty days they made slow progress up stream, monotonously poling all day against the strong current, and
generally finding a convenient bank on which to camp at night. Sometimes, however, they were obliged to sleep in the boats, and on a few occasions they were entertained by people living on the river side.

John Smith and his mission were received everywhere with the greatest respect, and the village chiefs, called Penghulus, along the river side, did all they could to assist him. It was after twelve days of this journey up river that they arrived at the landing-place for the mines, which they had been instructed to visit. They found a considerable village on the river bank, with some Siamese shopkeepers and many Malays from Sumatra. Much gambling and quarreling were going on, for it seemed that people soon got rich, and as quickly gambled away their gains.

They spent nearly a week here, and John Smith made a very careful study of the customs of the miners, as well as of the mining business from a commercial point of view... He felt convinced that very handsome profits could be made if the mining was properly managed; but as he found it, he was afraid that the Queen, who advanced all the provisions for the miners, was not getting a fair return for her participation in the business, any more than, as head of the State, she was getting the royalty of ten per cent., which was the state share of the tin produced.

There were two classes of work going on. The Malays were getting the tin sand out of the hill-side, by conducting water from the streams in the hills to places which were known to be rich in ore, and by washing down the sides of the hills into a long water race, which carried away the soil and left the heavier tin sand at the head of the race. The Siamese, on the other hand, were digging deep wells down to the stratum bearing tin ore, fifty to seventy feet deep. These wells were gradually enlarged as they descended,
until they became like huge inverted funnels in the earth, very dangerous indeed to work in, and also liable to fall in and leave deep, open pits. The whole business was, however, as John Smith could very quickly perceive, so hedged round by superstition and roguery, that instead of the profits being divided between the Queen, as owner of the mine and supplier of all necessaries to the miners, and the miners themselves, they were all absorbed by a lot of unscrupulous people, who neither worked nor assisted in the working by supplying material or food to the miners. At the head of these was a man who declared himself to be an agent of the King of Siam. This individual required every miner to give six days' service each year in what he called the King of Siam's mine. But he would accept a certain quantity of tin ore in lieu of the service, in fact rather preferred it, for the King of Siam's mine was not a very profitable one: in fact it was little more than a name used as a stalking-horse by way of reason to make people pay instead of doing the six days' work.

There was another man who said he was the Queen's agent, who made a good living out of certain commissions paid to him by a company of Chinese who conducted the public gaming tables; and it was very much to be doubted if any of the commission found its way to the Royal treasury. Many others practised equally ingenious ways of intercepting the legitimate profits of the miners. One man declared that he was empowered to collect payment for the right to burn charcoal for smelting the tin; and another would not allow smelting furnaces to be built without his authority, for which he demanded payment in the name of the Queen.

John Smith took careful note of everything he saw, with the intent to report it to his mistress, as he was sure that
all this squeezing was unauthorised, or if not, that at any rate neither the Queen nor her State treasury were any the richer for it. He would much have liked to suppress the man who called himself the agent for the King of Siam, as he was sure that he was a fraud, but he thought it better not to attempt anything in the matter, as he had no force to back up his orders; and after all, the most important part of his work was his mission to Raman, which he did not wish to jeopardise by any action that might damage his prestige at the outset. So he contented himself with merely taking notice of all that was going on.

A matter which greatly interested him was the extraordinary and peculiar superstitions of the miners, a cult which was assiduously fostered by the pawangs, or wise men. These pawangs taught the people that the ore was alive and grew, that it had power to move from place to place, was sensitive to correct or incorrect treatment, and could only be obtained, and when obtained, smelted into metallic tin, if certain rites and observances were fulfilled. In furtherance of this cult, the pawangs had invented a language to be used on the mines in which the names of many things were altered, in order that the spirit of the tin ore should not be offended by undue familiarity. In the same way as when talking with people of royal descent, a respectful and uncommon form of address and different expressions ought to be used.

Besides the language to be used, the pawangs had invented a code of regulations to be observed on the mines; and any breach of these rules, or the omission to use the dialect prescribed, was punished by a fine to be paid to the pawang. John Smith was not very much against the pawangs, for in spite of the fact that the superstition which they upheld and by which they got their living was more or less absurd,
they were evidently doing useful work in keeping some sort of order amongst the miners; and moreover, the faith of the people in their power had to be kept alive by some means, and the most efficacious was showing them where to find good deposits of ore; so that the Pawangs in their own interests became the prospectors for the community, and thus did good work for their share of the profits, even if some of their teaching was rather silly.

There were no women in this village or on the mines, for it was one of the rules made by the pawangs that women should not be allowed there. It was, perhaps, a salutary rule, for it was obvious that if a few women were to take up their abode amongst such a mixed lot of men, they would cause endless quarrelling. The community did not consist of staid married men so much as of young bachelors, who came up to the mines for a few months, with the intention of earning some money, and of then returning down river, perhaps to buy a bit of land or a wife, or to embark in some other undertaking. Too often it happened that when they had got a little tin sand and had made a start for home, they lost it all at the gambling tables, or at a cock-fight in the village on the river, and had to go back to the mines again to earn some more.

John Smith first realised the use of opium during his stay at this mining place. He had on a few occasions smoked the drug in the Queen's Palace and at her invitation, for she was a profound believer in the good properties which it possessed, and occasionally used it herself. It was evident that if in the Palace, where life was easy and comfortable, opium was useful as a tranquilliser, here in the forest where life was hard, between the rough work of mining by day and gambling by night, without the comfort of woman's presence, men became indifferent as to how they lived and
what they ate, until hard fare and squalid living would have killed them with disease but for opium, which had here a still greater use, for its soothing influence made the rough and exciting life just bearable. It was truly a magic drug, and John Smith seemed unable to write enough in its praise whether it was taken as one lay on the beautiful mats and supported by the elaborately-embroidered bolsters in the Queen's Palace, surrounded by all the Eastern luxuriance of beautiful attendants and voluptuous accessories, or whether it was rendered even more entrancing by the presence of the witty and kindly Queen herself, who, in her anxiety that her protégé should appreciate to the full the good qualities of the drug, often invited him to smoke with her, when she prepared the pipe for him herself, arranging his cushions at just the right angle, and supplying him with delicious little cups of tea or sweetmeats in the intervals of smoking, the while she kept him amused with her witty and clever conversation.

Or perhaps they would listen to the adventures of some famous chieftain of the country, as recounted by a clever story-teller, whose imagination and knowledge of the history and traditions of the people enabled him to weave a long epic poem, describing the most astounding adventures in which human beings, jins, sheitans and peris all played their parts, and which, whilst it kept the group of attendant girls spell-bound and open-mouthed listening to its recital, amused the Queen and caused John Smith to feel an ever-increasing respect for the race, which could produce and appreciate such beautiful thoughts and such delicate imagery, as the "Soother of cares" gave utterance to.

Or perhaps the Queen would order the Palace girls to dance and sing to them; and generally there was some business of the State to do, for when a minister asked for
an audience he was always admitted, and after his affair had been discussed, he also, if his rank admitted him to intimacy, joined the Queen’s party and spent the rest of the evening in the Palace.

It was not all voluptuous lotus-eating, for the Queen was too clever a ruler to allow her ministers to neglect their work and fall into indolence. It was only that the way of living in the East was easier than it could ever be in the West; and generally speaking, if affairs were consistently put off until to-morrow, they righted themselves without actual intervention on the part of persons in authority.

Or whether in the rough shed on the tin mine inhabited by the old pawang, after a long day’s work walking over the mines, and under the influence of the delightful lassitude and tiredness caused by an ice-cold bath, taken standing under the end of a bamboo conduit, he stretched himself on his mat spread on the rough splitbamboo floor of the hut, and had his frugal meal of rice and salt fish; then the wise old pawang produced his primitive lamp and opium pipe, which John Smith supplied with opium from the Queen’s Palace, and the smoke then enjoyed was of a different sort; it was the real soother of the tired body, and the medicine which kept off the dreaded fever and ague. The old pawang’s tales and conversation, in the meantime, were most entertaining, and the advice which he gave as to the journey over the hills into the Perak watershed, where the Prince of Raman was, came in very useful.

Six days’ poling up the river from the mines found John Smith’s party at the end of their journey by water. They had now to cross a range of hills which divided the Patani River basin from that of Perak. The Semangs said it was a seven nights’ journey, and that they would have to make their own camps each night, because there were no inhabitants
in the hills except a few Semangs, and the guides did not seem to wish to take the party near their clearings, because, they said, of the Siamese and Chinese traders with them, but probably because they objected equally as much to the white man.

They promised to guide them to a river where bamboo rafts could be constructed, on which they might float down to the country inhabited by the Raman Malays; and the old pawang at the mines had told John Smith that if he found a man called Alang Pekan, who was a trader on the river, he would through him, get to know the Raman chiefs.

It was toilsome work, but most interesting, walking through the forest. John Smith hoped to be able to shoot some wild animals. He had brought with him a beautiful new-fashioned gun, which had lately been invented, and which would most likely take the place of the old matchlock. This gun was fired by a spark produced by striking a sharp-edged bit of pyrites on a little steel anvil, and was much more convenient than the clumsy matchlock. But he found no chance to use this weapon. True tracks of elephants, tigers, and many other animals were everywhere, but almost the only animals he saw were the leeches which fixed on his legs, and the mosquitoes which devoured him by night.

It was a rest for the party, or at least a change of work, when they arrived at the river, and having spent a day constructing bamboo rafts, at last launched themselves on its waters and started their downstream journey.

It was not without its pleasurable excitement and its spice of danger, this raft voyage. In the first place, the rafts were of the frailest construction, consisting of a double layer of bamboo poles about four feet wide and fifteen feet
long. The passenger or pile of baggage was placed in the centre of these, and a raftsman at either end. It was all easy enough in smooth water, but sometimes they had to shoot down rather steep rapids, and then it was a case of holding on, and that pretty tightly. As it was, there were two or three shipwrecks, but luckily no one was drowned, and the accidents only provoked laughter.

It took them three days rafting to get down to the kampong, or place where Inchi Alang Pekan lived. There they found a prosperous community. Both banks of the river were lined with nice houses, each standing in its own grove of coconut and fruit trees, and each having its floating bath-house on the river. There were probably over two hundred of these houses. As soon as the travellers arrived, the Penghulu, or Chief of the place, was called. This gentleman immediately offered to entertain the party; but on John Smith enquiring for the house of Inchi Alang Pekan, and stating that he thought of building a small house for himself, the Penghulu showed considerable relief, and it came out that, although he would have done his best, it would have certainly been a little awkward for him to entertain them, as he had already a guest, and a very important one too, namely, a high official sent by the King of Perak to find out all about the country. He therefore conducted him along the river bank to the house of the trader, Alang Pekan, and passed him over to the latter with evident relief.

Inchi Alang was a Perak man who had migrated to Raman some years before with his wife and three daughters; or rather one daughter and two adopted ones, these latter being the children of his dead sister, who, with her husband, had died when the girls were little more than babies. 'Che Alang’s own daughter had mysteriously disappeared a few months before this time. He was himself a small trader, but
a person of some considerable influence in the place, as he was known to be well off.

The men from Patani were sent off to find temporary quarters in the mosque; the Semangs expressed their intention of going to the forest until their services were again required; while a very dirty Chinese shopkeeper promised to put up the Chinese and Siamese. So 'Che Alang only had to provide room for John Smith himself, which he seemed to have great pleasure in doing. The Penghulu retired with many professions of eagerness to be of service in the future, and the white man's baggage was moved up to the end of the verandah of the house farthest away from the steps which led up to the raised floor; and he, hastily finding a sarong and jacket, ran off down to the river to indulge in a comfortable bath in the floating bath-house.

He was some time over his bath, and on his return to the house he first hung up his wet clothes to dry, and then went up into the verandah with the intention of making some arrangements about food, as he was very hungry. But passing on to the inner end he found all his packages neatly arranged against the wall, and a nice clean mat and bolsters spread out ready for him, with a stand containing the materials for chewing siri set beside it. Now siri was the thing that John Smith wanted most, to stimulate him after his cold bath, so he proceeded to arrange a mouthful for himself, and as he was masticating it the door of the house was opened, and a very pleasantlooking young girl walked up the verandah towards him. When she arrived within a few feet of the edge of his mat, she sat down on the floor in a modest attitude, and saluting him with the same homage as was proper for a woman towards her chief, she said that she was the eldest daughter of the house, and it was therefore her duty to wait on her father's guests.
She then asked him if he would be pleased to eat rice, and on his saying that he was ready, she went into the house again and brought out a little cooking pot full of steaming rice, and some small cups of fish and vegetables cooked with spices, to eat with it. These things she arranged near her, and seating herself, she gravely served the food on to her guest’s plate; and then, after he had finished eating, she poured water over his fingers to cleanse them, and prepared a packet of siri for him to chew.

John Smith noticed that she still wore the gold-wire earrings with a round loop at the end, denoting maidenhood. She was very shy and went through her duties as hostess with some considerable hesitation, but he ascertained that her name was Si Andak, that she had a younger sister, Si Uteh, and that they were not the real daughters of 'Che Alang Pekan. His real daughter, 'Che Long, had gone away about two months before, nobody knew wither, and that this was therefore the first time the duty had devolved on her to entertain her father’s guest; and as she told him this, she lifted her eyes to his face in a very appealing and frightened way, and then asked his permission to take away the remnants of the meal.

He was by this time well aware of the hospitable customs of the Malays of these parts, but he decided that he would the next morning get his men together, and build a little house for himself somewhere in 'Che Alang’s land down by the river pretending that he intended to stay a long time and wished to do a little trading. Thinking over these things made him sleepy, and he knew nothing more until he awoke the next morning, to find Si Andak watching him from a respectful distance, and waiting to conduct him to his morning bath.

He found his men, and set them to work building a small
house on a spot which 'Che Alang pointed out to him. The house was finished in four days, for 'Che Alang found many willing helpers to build it, but moving into it was quite another matter. Old 'Che Alang protested against it. He said he would for ever be disgraced in his own eyes and in the opinion of his neighbours, if his guest left him to live by himself. Was not his house and all that it contained at his guest's disposal? Why, therefore, should he attempt to put this slight on his slave, and cause him to punish his daughter with blows, and perhaps worse, for surely it could only be her fault and neglect of his guest, which should cause him to wish to leave?

The next time John Smith saw Si Andak, she looked most unhappy and as if she had been crying; he therefore told her that he would not move into the house he had built, and she showed him that she was delighted with his decision. But he himself was not so happy about it: he remembered the proverb which compared such a situation to placing tinder near fire.
CHAPTER XXI.

LA-alla-ha-illa-lah! LA-alla-ha-illa-lah! monotonously the chant went on; La-alla-ha-ILLA-lah! with a different inflection, and again another and another inflection, until the band of Korinchipedlars, who were exercising their vocal organs and indulging in what they considered to be a meritorious act of worship, had worked themselves up into an ecstasy of religious fervour almost maniacal in its symptoms; eyes rolling, hands pressed into their sides, and toes twitching, as they sat cros-legged on the mats spread over the bamboo floor of the little shop which they had honoured by their presence for the night, and the master of which, staid old Alang Pekan, sat by in awed wonderment at their antics.

Far into the night they sat and chanted and swayed, taking no notice of old 'Che Alang's respectful offers of food and water, his tentative pushing over of the siri stand, or his timidly offered nipah cigarettes.

Poor old 'Che Alang was nonplussed, he had rarely met Korinchi men, and had never been present at a séance such as was taking place now in his little shop. His old and faithful wife and their two adopted daughters peeped through the holes in the palm-leaf wall, which divided his raised house from the small shop on the ground, and watched the movements and listened to the voices of these strangers with awe and misgiving; at least the old lady and Si Uteh did; for Si Andak, since she had known John Smith, had acquired more courage, and had learnt from him more of
the ways of the world. She was therefore less subject to surprise and fear, when she experienced a new sensation for the first time, and besides, was she not aware that her new friend was himself all the time only a few yards away from her at the end of the enclosed verandah, lying on the best and whitest mats, which she, in the exercise of her duties as hostess, had spread for him.

She wondered what he was doing whilst all this hubbub was going on. Was he sleeping through it all? But perhaps he was reading, or with great difficulty writing, as he always seemed to be doing when he was in the house, continually having to sharpen his splendid pen, made from a tail feather of the argus pheasant he had shot two days before, and which she thought looked so fine and noble as it trailed over his shoulder and gently waved about as he moved the butt-end of it in his writing.

Poor Andak! she was fast becoming foolish with love for this stranger, who had been staying with them now for nearly a fortnight, and who, although he had a little difficulty in making himself understood, by reason of his imperfect knowledge of the particular patois spoken by these Raman people, still seemed to her so gentle and kind, and so very unlike the other men she had seen, that her instincts were stirred to the utmost, and as she expressed it to herself, "her liver yearned for him".

It was the first time that she had ever had to take her position as the eldest daughter of the house, although she was nearly seventeen years old, because the real daughter of the old couple, the only child they had ever had, and who had been almost like a twin sister to Andak, had lately been spirited away; some said by the orang bunyi (echo spirits), but others, who were more sophisticated, hinted at budak raja (Raja's followers). However it was,
'Che Long was gone, and Andak was now the customary hostess of the house and must fulfil her duties.

She was glad that the white man arrived before this band of Korinchis, who seemed to look as if they were bold, hard men and the leader of whom she would have been obliged to entertain, if she had not already a guest of her own. As it was, the old mother would make the Korinchis free of the well and kitchen, and they would sleep where they sat, on the raised floor of the little shop, after they had finished their religious exercises and eaten their rice and scrap of salt fish, seasoned with the kemumu shoots, which so disgusted Si Andak, because they smelt just like the stinking house bug, but without which the very highly civilized Korinchi seems never to enjoy his food.

Still the monotonous chant went on, LA-alla-ha-illa-lah! but the cadence was altered, it had become more ecstatic, for the syllables were panted out, rather than sung, as fast as the tongue could articulate them. The half dozen bodies, now stripped of everything except the travel-stained white trowsers, swayed from side to side, the heads dropped from shoulder to shoulder in an ecstatic hysteria, the sweat rolled off the smooth faces on to the glistening shoulders, and the end seemed to be near, when Nature would not be able to much longer bear the strain of the violent emotions which the exercise called forth. Already a close observer might have seen little brass boxes stolen out of waist-belt pockets, and pills of opium surreptitiously slipped into the gaping animal mouths, in order to stimulate the flagging energies for prolonged exertion; but it was of little avail. The verve and life had gone out of the song, and one by one the singers dropped over on to their sides, huddled up into separate balls of humanity, their arms clasped round their knees, and their muscles still twitching in the rhythm of the chant.
The end was hastened a good deal by the detection of one of their number when in the act of slipping an opium pill into his mouth. Although each knew that every one of his companions took the stimulant, detection in the act of doing it was disgraceful; so that when the culprit was taken red-handed, the man who found him out — although he had himself only just swallowed a pill — sat bolt upright, changed the cadence of the chant to a loud and long-drawn-out — "LA-ALLA-HA-ILLA-LAH?" — and pointed with the forefinger of his left hand to the delinquent. The others, perceiving the action, immediately knew what was meant, joined in the new tune, and literally chanted the shamed one out of countenance, so that after a few feeble efforts he collapsed and rolled over on to the floor. The end was not then long, for the extra exertion of the accusing chant exhausted the accusers, and one after another they dropped over into a recumbent position and passed into a trance-like sleep.

True, for about ten minutes, at intervals, first one and then another would rouse himself, like an unbeaten cock in the cock-pit, and with more or less energy shout out the well-known refrain; but it was only spasmodic and of no avail, for it merely set the inert limbs of the others twitching for a minute or two. They were too exhausted even to eat the rice which had been duly prepared before the séance began, and it must now be left until the morrow, when probably it would be found insufficient to recoup them after their night's orgie.

Si Andak still contemplated the strange scene from the other side of the thin palm-leaf wall and poor little Uteh clung to her in fear and trembling. She was not yet fifteen years old, and was very frightened. When it was all over, and silence reigned in the house, the old mother, who had
long ceased to take any interest in the singing, said to Si Andak:

"You must now go and see if the Tuan (Master) is asleep; but you must come back immediately, as these strangers are in the house. If the Tuan asleep, you may be allowed today to bend over him and smell his breath; and if he is awake, you may give him these three packets of siri, which I have prepared, and you may stay by him whilst he enjoys one of them. But first press the siri to your forehead, and say "Bismillah!"; then to your lips, saying "Inshallah!" and lastly to your liver, under your right breast, and say "Alla-hu-akbar!" If you do this, and if he eats the siri, good fortune will come to the house, because we shall have exercised the sacred rites of hospitality, even to the giving our daughter to the guest sent to us by Allah."

Si Andak did as her foster-mother ordered her, fully believing in the efficacy of a particular charm which the old lady had recited as she carefully wrapped up the pinang (areca nut), kapar (slaked lime) and gambier in the siri (betel) leaf, making a neat little three-cornered packet, with the stem of the leaf for a handle. Had not this love charm been taught her by Pawang Onak, the clever old fetish doctor? And did it not commence with the mystic OM? and consist of the carefully recorded genealogy of Tuan Putri Gunong Ladang, (the fairy Princess of Mount Ophir)? And was not the old lady word perfect in her recitation of it?

How could it therefore, fail to excite passion, even in an Orang puteh (white man)?

The added Mohamadan charm, which a knowing Perak haji had sold to the old lady for six fine fowls and a gold nugget as big as the top joint of her thumb, seemed almost superfluous; but the latter was also recommended to Si Andak in this case, as perhaps being necessary, because the
old lady had heard John Smith talking to her husband about Nabi Isa, (Jesus) and the Prophet Mohamad, and she would lose no chance of making Si Andak happy, for she loved her as much as her own lost daughter; and it was plain to her that Si Andak was deeply moved by this stranger, who, the old lady had long since made up her mind, was the most gentle and polite male of her species she had ever seen.

So with a few more instructions and a little more whispered advice, couched in that mysterious *bhasa dalam* (secret language used in the feminine freemasonry of that part of the Peninsula) the old lady sent Si Andak on her mission; blessing herself fervently, in that she was able to equip her darling so well with charms, added to her own natural attractions, as to give her a fair chance of attaining her dearest desire.

Si Andak herself, too, felt happy and confident, as she lightly stepped over the gangway between the house and the kitchen, traversed the kitchen, and crept down the back stairs of the house, in order to go round to the front ladder and up into the verandah, where she knew she would find her guest, asleep or awake. She could not decide which to hope for. She only knew that she wished to be with him. Strangely her heart fluttered, and her blood seemed to warm her face, shoulders and breast, as she slowly and carefully went round the house, in order not to awaken her foster-father and his guests. Not that the former would have disapproved of her errand, but because it seemed to her that to night, more than on any of the other nights, when she had gone into the verandah of the house to see if their God-sent guest required anything more for his comfort, somehow great events were to happen, and it behoved her to act secretly, and preserve the mystery of
whatever might take place in the train of the charms which had been spoken, as a sacred thing between herself and him whom she hoped soon to recognise as her worshipped lover.

Because of this, when in the bright moonlight, which seemed also to her an added charm, — for the moon was at the full and glistened through the leaves of the coconut trees, making strange patterns on the walls of the house, like enormous centipedes with moving fingers,— she stopped at the foot of the front ladder and once more pressed the packets of siri to her forehead, lips and body, forgetting the difficult Arabic abjurations, but instead uttering the mystic OM! three times, before she climbed up into the house and passed along to the end of the verandah, where John Smith was lying asleep. She was glad of this, for she felt that she would have been confused and awkward if he had been awake. She now knew what she had to do: it was very simple; she had only to place her charmed siri packets close to his shoulder, where he must find them when he awoke, just once lean over him, inhale his breath, then go back to her own mat beside her young sister and wait until morning before she saw her hero again. Then she would accompany him to the river, and perhaps he would allow her to shampoo him after he had bathed, an attention to which he had up to the present raised some objection.

Very simple seemed her programme, and she proceeded to carry it out. She placed the siri in its appointed place, and then sat down close to his head in the proper maidenly attitude, with her legs bent under her towards the left, and leant over him to inhale his breath into her own nostrils. She felt glad that the torch was nearly out, for somehow, as her face approached his, she felt that strange fluttering of her pulses again, and her eyes seemed to grow bigger
and to comprehend more the object at which she was
gazing, his face, calm and undisturbed in sleep.

She could not linger, but hurriedly and without noise rose
to her feet, with the intention of leaving him; indeed she
had gone half the length of the verandah on her journey
back to her own part of the house, when suddenly she
remembered that the torch would soon go out, and that it
was not safe to sleep without a light in a verandah which,
though supposed to be closed, was practically open, as all
the flaps of palm leaves were strutted out with sticks to
make it more airy. Black panthers had been known to get
into house verandahs, and there were always the hantus
(malignant spirits) to fear. She shuddered at the thought,
and felt her face go white with fear: she must do something
to protect her beloved.

It was easy to shift the torch-stand farther away from
his face, and stir up the burning end so that it showed a
good light, which could be shaded from the sleeper's face.
It was soon arranged so far as making the torch burn
brightly, but unfortunately for her resolutions, when the
light burnt up brighter it showed up his face more clearly.
Long she stood and watched him in his sleep, afraid to
stay for fear he should awake, perhaps from a lucky dream,
of which awakening she would be the guilty cause; yet
unable to tear herself away, because she so much desired
to see him open his eyes and to hear his voice speaking to
her, always kind and courteous, though distantly polite, as
he had been to her. She thought that during the last two
days, as she had attended to his wants, he had been slightly
more attentive to her. She remembered that he had admired
the maiden's jacket, which she wore the previous evening,
and which for that reason she wore again to night. Perhaps
if he awoke now and saw her, he might think that she was
at least as pretty as the other girls of the kampong, and be still more kind to her.

A truly beautiful picture she made as she stood there dressed in her soft *Batik sarong*, (the usual peticoat made of fine hand-painted linen, and brought from Java or Sulu) and her short virgin’s jacket. Prettily worked was this, made of a thin, light-blue silk from Kelantan, and ornamented round the collar and wrists with tiny filigree gold buttons. It was worn generally in the evenings, not from a sense of modesty to cover Si Andak’s firm and round little breasts, but because it was considered more beautiful than uncovered Nature; for indeed, during the heat of the day, Si Andak, like all her neighbours, wore only the one garment, which was supposed to be fastened over her bosom, high up under her arms, but which had an indiscreet habit of slipping down to her waist, and being fastened there.

She stood and gazed on the sleeping man, and at last it seemed impossible to her to leave him thus without once more gazing closely into his face; so she again approached his mat with the intention of once again putting her nose and lips near his, but alas for her resolution! she remembered that he had told her that in his country people did not smell each others mouths, but actually pressed their lips together, as she had seen holy men kiss their own hands after they had finished their prayers, surely it would not be very wrong if she just lightly pressed her lips to his before she went away from him.

Softly once more she sat down near his head, leant over him and gently kissed him on the mouth. As quietly John Smith suddenly raised himself to a sitting position and gazed at her as she crouched covered with confusion, so close to him. Her kiss had awakened him, and at last he was conscious that she loved him; and she knew now that
he knew she loved him; and in spite of the terrible state of confusion this knowledge threw her into, she was happy. And her guest, what of him? He had learnt from the merchants of Patani, and indeed on his long journey up the river and across into Raman he had been importuned to accept the hospitality of the country, which withholds nothing from the Heaven-sent guest, not even the most prized daughter of the house, but because of his natural modesty, and perhaps also from a diplomatic desire not to offend the people amongst whom his lot was cast, from this extreme hospitality he had refrained. The two girls bestowed on him by the good Queen were different; they were merely slaves of the Palace, and many such odalisques were always found in the houses of Eastern potentates, and were habitually given to favoured guests and friends, by way of compliment.

But he was a human animal, and sincere searcher after the truth and right as his writings prove him to have been, his walk in life was now amongst this gentle if passionate and unsophisticated people, and he felt that it behoved him no longer to refrain from answering the love appeal, which he had for the last few days seen light up Si Andak’s eyes whenever he had looked into her face. Gently he took her two little hands into his own right hand, and with his left arm round her shoulders, drew her towards him, and then returned to her on her own mouth the sweet little kiss which she had given to him in his sleep.

He would have spoken to her and asked her what made her come to him, but she placed her hand on his mouth and motioned him not to speak for fear of waking the Korinchis, who were just on the other side of the thin palm-leaf wall. She slipped from his embrace, and taking with her his kain preh, (a heavy black silk coverlet), went towards the top of the ladder, where she stood and beckoned
him. At last he understood her meaning, and picking up another coverlet he followed her. At the bottom of the steps she again awaited him, and led him across the laman (open cleared space in front of the house), towards the jungle path down to the river, holding his left thumb in her right hand.

"Would you walk in the forest during the bright moonlight, Si Andak?" he asked her.

"No", replied Si Andak. "No, crown of my heart; only so far as the little house you have built by the river."

And so they passed on their way, for it was towards the middle of the night. And Si Uteh, when she went down to the river the next morning, found John Smith and her sister already there; and she noticed, also, that at last he had allowed Si Andak to shampoo his shoulders.
CHAPTER XXII.

John Smith's host, old 'Che Alang Pekan, was a Perak man, and the Penghulu of the district was entertaining a Perak official, who had evidently been sent by the King of Perak to find out what this country which the Raman people had colonized was worth, and the Prince of Raman was said to be allied to Perak. It seemed to the Queen of Patani's emissary that he was in rather a dangerous place, and that it behoved him to be a little careful of his proceedings.

The Korinchi traders who had been stopping for two or three days in 'Che Alang's house, had come from Perak, following the river right up from its mouth, where James Neccy's fleet had called two years before. These Raman people were therefore living on the main Perak River or a branch of it. This perhaps seemed a reason why they should owe allegiance to Perak rather than to Patani, for John Smith had noticed that these small states nearly all took their names from rivers.

He had many talks with the Korinchi traders, who by virtue of their roving life gathered much gossip, which they retailed with their wares as they journeyed from place to place; and he ascertained that the transference of the allegiance of the Prince of Raman had come about in quite a natural way, hardly requiring the extra incentive of the quarrel about paying tribute to Siam to bring it about.

The people were without doubt more closely allied to
Patani than to Perak, and had only accepted the overlordship of the latter by compulsion, if indeed they were at one with their Prince in throwing off their allegiance to Patani; but the reason was evident, and it seemed a good one according to what he had learned of the politics of the Malays, which required that the boundaries between states should follow the lines of division between the areas drained by different rivers, and these Raman people had certainly migrated from their own country drained by the Patani River, to a district which belonged to the Perak. So perhaps he was on the wrong side of the dispute, if he tried to negotiate the return of the Raman people to Patani tutelage.

The other side of the question was that he was an officer in the service of the Queen of Patani, and therefore was bound to work for her, whether the case was good or bad; and that argument was conclusive.

The Prince of Raman lived some two days' journey down the river. John Smith did not consider it well to visit him until he had found out more about his character, and also until he was a little more certain that his people preferred Patani to Perak, as he imagined they did. It was a game of intrigue which had to be played, and it was without doubt a rather difficult one, for the Perak emissary had been on the ground some time before him, and had thus been able to tell his tale first. The Malay character being what it was, this was an immense advantage to Perak.

Malays, as John Smith had already found, were very children, and would believe anything that was told them. They would make all sorts of promises to the first comer, and then the second man who wished to influence them had a poor chance, for be his case ever so good, he would find it most difficult to make the Malay alter what he had committed himself to. Malay pride was never more manifest
than in the dread of losing a good name, or being made to look ridiculous before the world.

Another factor in the matter was the great loyalty displayed by all Malays towards their chiefs. It was thus not an easy task which he had to attempt, and he was very dubious as to the result.

He had several times met the Perak officer, and had endeavoured to throw dust in his eyes by declaring himself to be a merchant, who was merely visiting the country in the way of business; but it was not likely that he had succeeded; and indeed, now that he had become more intimate with Si Andak, he was fast finding out more about the situation, and began to think that perhaps after all he had better return to Patani, and see if the Queen was inclined to regain her control over her revolted vassal by force of arms, for he felt nearly certain that would be the only way.

He spent some more days doing as little as he could to make himself conspicuous except as a trader, but then in that character he was somewhat handicapped, as he had no goods to sell, and nothing except some gold dust where with to purchase, and gold dust was not wanted by the people any more than he wanted what they had to sell, so that his trading could not but look peculiar to the onlookers.

The chief produce of the country seemed to be heavy merchandise, like canes, wood oils and other natural forest produce, which might be profitable to export through Perak by the river, but would hardly pay to carry over the hills into Patani. Whilst he was thus considering what was best to be done, and was carefully trying to find out how the people liked the idea of being in the grasp of Perak instead of Patani, an incident occurred, which at any rate made him popular personally, and in the same degree caused the Perak man to lose favour.
A man was brought home to his house from the forest who had been badly hurt by a tiger. Now the Perak man had been boasting a great deal about his prowess as a hunter, so naturally, when this man was attacked, the people immediately went to him proposing that he should show them how to kill the tiger, which had been prowling about the houses for some time, and had done a good deal of damage amongst the goats and poultry, but which had never before attacked a human being. The gentleman from Perak did not, however, show any alacrity in bestirring himself in the matter. He gave very good reasons for not doing so, such as that he had not got his proper spear with him, and that he required some charms which he had unfortunately left behind in Perak, etc., reasons which made it impossible for him to go out and fight the tiger. But the people all seemed to think that perhaps the most important item was that he was afraid; and when old 'Che Alang Pekan told his guest about it, he made him see very plainly that he thought very little of his compatriot's courage, or of his chance of gaining the goodwill of the people amongst whom he had been sent as an emissary, charged to impress them with the greatness of Perak.

Now John Smith had long wished to meet some wild animal in its native forest, and to try his strength and cunning in an encounter with a beast that other people were afraid of. He had a good deal of confidence in his new-fashioned gun, having killed several crocodiles with it in the Patani River, as well as in Africa; and he did not see, therefore, why it should not be good enough to kill a tiger with. So he broached the subject to 'Che Alang, and asked him the best way to set about getting within shooting distance of this one, which was in the habit of visiting the neighbourhood; and in order to find out all they could
about it they first visited the man who had been hurt. This was also a lucky chance for John Smith, as the man was found to be a great deal torn about by the tiger's claws and in danger of dying, because the native doctors were apparently unable to stop the bleeding from a bad wound in the calf of the leg. This was soon set right, and the pain being deadened with some of the African salve, the new doctor proceeded to sow up the worst wounds, and in fact attended to him so well and made him feel so very much better by the application of the African salve to his sore places, that the cure seemed miraculous, both to the patient and his neighbours. Whilst binding up the man's wounds, they were enabled to find out all about the habits and haunts of the tiger, and lay their plans to secure him.

'Che Alang was in favour of setting a trap for him baited with a live goat, but this did not meet with his guest's views: for it was his wish to prove himself a better man than the gentleman from Perak, and to do that he was willing to run some risks. He explained to 'Che Alang that if he got a good view of the beast, he felt sure of killing him with one shot from his musket; but of course the difficulty was to get into such a position as to be able to see the tiger before it saw him.

They made a careful examination of the ground about the place where the man had been attacked, and found that the tiger had been in the habit of coming from the forest and crossing a narrow but deep branch of the river — which ran behind the cultivated land and the houses — by a fallen tree which was lying from bank to bank and made a bridge, constantly used by the people when they wished to go to the forest.

The wounded man had been attacked on the forest side of this stream just as he was about to cross the natural
bridge and he had only escaped with his life by the assistance of some people who were going fishing in the stream by torch-light, and who ran across the bridge and frightened the tiger by flourishing their torches in its face. Now John Smith conceived the idea of enticing the tiger to the forest bank of the river, within view of the opposite bank, and near the bridge, by tying up a goat on the spot where the man had been attacked. It was the time of full moon, and it would be almost as light as day, so that if he kept watch on the goat from the opposite side, himself hidden in some bushes on the river bank, he should be able to get a shot and seriously wound the tiger, even if he did not kill it outright.

He made special provision also for the tiger if he missed it, or only wounded it slightly, in which event it would probably be angry enough to cross the river by the fallen tree to attack, when of course he would only have his pistol and sword to defend himself with, for it was unlikely that he would have time to reload his musket. He provided for this contingency, then, by sawing the tree bridge almost asunder, so that as soon as the tiger got to the center it must indubitably fall into the river, bridge and all, when it would be at such disadvantage that it would be safe to attack it with the sword.

They made all their preparations, cut the tree through all but just sufficient to support, it tied up the goat, and prepared a hiding-place for both of them, left a little boy to warn people not to cross the bridge, and then returned to 'Che Alang’s house and ate their evening rice together. Si Andak felt no misgivings about the safety of her guest, for she was quite confident that he could kill giants if they came in his way. But instead she gravely asked her father if it was part of her duty to attend her
guest when he went to fight the tiger, and old 'Che Alang as gravely replied that it was not necessary, as he intended going with him himself and would see that he came to no harm.

So when it began to get dusk the two hunters took up their position on the side of the river near the end of the bridge. They were carefully concealed behind some bushes, and could plainly see the goat tied to an areca-nut palm on the other side of the stream. The poor beast was evidently in a great fright already, and did not cease to cry and struggle to get away from its cord.

The sportsmen, also, were not very happy, for the mosquitoes seemed determined to do their duty by keeping them awake, an attention with which they could have very well dispensed. But it was out of the question to light a fire and make a smoke to keep them off, as was the usual custom. This custom, by the way, John Smith had got so used to, sitting and sleeping in an atmosphere full of pungent smoke, that it did not now trouble him any more than it did the Malays.

Now, however, it was a good deal worse, crouching behind a screen of bushes for hours with no defence against the blood-thirsty little beasts, whose buzzing was not the least disagreeable part of their attack, for they dared not use their hands to beat them off, nor did they feel justified in swearing at them, at least only inwardly, for fear of letting the tiger know that they were waiting for him. Many hours they, thus sat in discomfort and patiently awaited events, and many times 'Che Alang ventured to hint that perhaps their friend did not mean to come that night. Berollah dapor, (Revered one of the kitchen) and other affectionate names he called the tiger, instead of using the real name of the beast, "for why" he asked, should they
incense him unnecessarily even if they were going to try to kill him?"

'Che Alang kept himself awake and alert by assiduously chewing siri. He kept an account of how many quids he used during the night, by placing in a lump little bits of stick, one for each quid. John Smith was also provided with a supply calculated to last him the night through which Si Andak had prepared them for him, made up into nice little three-cornered packets, like those she had used as love charms when the Korinchi traders were in the house. She had reminded him of the incident when she gave them to him, and had said she knew that they would be as potent to bring him back safe and sound to her as the first ones had been to make him love her, and in his presence she recited the love-compelling charm, all about the Fairy princess, commencing with the mystic \textit{OM}!

He had plenty of time during the night of patient waiting to remember his sweet little hostess and her constant care for his comfort, though his thoughts were a good deal mixed up with cursings addressed to the mosquitoes. It was nearly dawn before their patience was rewarded, and they were both of them heartily tired of the lengthy vigil long before it was over.

The first intimation they had of the tiger's approach was hearing the poor goat commence to cry very piteously. She had apparently been asleep for the last two or three hours when she suddenly started to her feet and commenced to bleat in a most distressful way, not struggling to get away from her tether, as she did when she was first tied up, but turning herself round restlessly in every direction and uttering heart-rending cries, as if she knew there was danger somewhere and she could not locate it. This went on for some little time until she stopped in the middle of a prolonged
“Baa-a”, and facing the forest, stood as if transfixed with horror and fright. And well she might, for what she saw was enough to try the nerves of something stronger than a poor half-starved she-goat, tied up and helpless.

The watchers on the other side of the river saw it almost as soon as the goat did, and the sight was not calculated to fill them with confidence. Between the edge of the river and the forest, there was a stretch of about fifty yards of short green turf, which had been grazed close by the domestic water buffaloes, and across this was creeping a large tiger, with eyes gleaming and fixed on its prey, and crouching with its belly touching the ground as it gradually advanced foot by foot, like a cruel and inexorable fate. And all the time the poor goat stood still, shivering and awaiting the coming doom.

The moon rode high in the heavens in a clear and cloudless sky, and the whole scene was like a picture displayed before the watchers, whose excitement was so intense that John Smith has recorded since that he wondered they ever had power to take part in the forest drama which was being enacted. Slowly and, as it seemed to the watchers, with more and more deliberation, the great cat came on, until it seemed as if it would never compass the distance between the forest and the goat. Surely it was playing with its victim! There never could be any need to so cruelly delay the spring, which meant death and a release from agony for the poor destined breakfast of this lord of the forest. It made John Smith angry to contemplate the sight, but it braced him effectually for his part in the play. 'Che Alang, too, now grasped his broad-bladed spear with determination.

And then, suddenly, the end came. The tiger was within twenty feet of its quarry, crouching as rigidly as if turned
to stone; and the poor goat was still in the same attitude as if she too was petrified. They could fancy that her mouth was still open to emit the "Baa-a" which was arrested half uttered. Next they saw the tiger's tail wave once from side to side, and then the lithe body was launched through the air, to fall with a soft thud to the ground, with the goat somewhere underneath. Another "Baa-a" was half uttered but not finished; and then they heard another noise, half purr, half gurgle, as the great beast buried its teeth in the throat and breast of its victim and sucked the warm blood as it lacerated the flesh and tore open the chest to get at the still palpitating heart.

'Che Alang nudged his companion: now was the time. John Smith took a most careful aim. There were not more than twenty yards between the muzzle of his gun and the tiger, so it seemed almost certain that he could plant a bullet direct in the brain. But he did not: he missed the head altogether. But his shot took effect in the shoulder. This only stirred the tiger to anger without severely wounding it. It immediately perceived where its assailants were, and with a bound and a savage snarl sprang on to the bridge to get at them; but the bridge collapsed with its weight and fell with it into the stream. This fall and the wound as well perhaps confused the brute, for instead of making for the bank on which its enemies stood prepared to receive it, it proceeded to climb the other bank, thus exposing to view the whole of its back. John Smith prayed for better luck, and got it, for his pistol bullet sped so well that the tiger tumbled back into the river with a broken spine, and there it floated helplessly until it managed to claw the bank with its front paws and hold itself there, for its hind legs were useless, and it could not climb. So it clung there long enough for the pistol to be reloaded, and
for John Smith to get a bullet into its brain, giving it its quietus.

The noise of the firing brought several people to the spot, and they promised to get the dead tiger ashore. So the tired hunters gladly left them in charge, and went home to get some sleep after their night of watching and final triumph.
CHAPTER XXIII.

John Smith got, as we say now, great kudos for this exploit, and the Perak man sank proportionately in the estimation of the people. Old 'Che Alang, Perak man though he was, declared that if his master, the King of Perak, could not send a more courageous man to look after his interests in the province of his new vassal, he would certainly not remain Suzerain long, as the people would persuade their chief to go back to his old allegiance to Patani, and rightly too.

John Smith's fame as a mighty hunter soon got about the country, and he began to hear of other exploits to perform, but he did not propose to risk either his life or his reputation by a too eager rush after adventures. He had done well in this first one, but the next might not turn out so successfully. So he spent the next few days quietly, and by way of improving the good opinion the people had of him, he set himself to assiduously nurse and doctor the man whom the tiger had wounded.

About this time there was news brought up river that an extraordinary beast had been seen in the forest at a place a day's journey down stream, called Bendang Tuan Putri Ayer Angat. (The padi fields of the Princess of the hot springs.)

The beast was said to be a fiery-horned rhinoceros and
most extraordinary tales were told about it. Some said that its horn spouted fire; others merely that the horn glowed like a live brand in the dark; but all agreed that it was of enormous size and that it was invulnerable. It had been seen by several people, and one man had been killed by it, trampled to death and torn to bits by the terrible horn, and it was averred that the poor man’s flesh was scorched as if with fire, or seared by a red-hot iron. Another man had been chased, and had only escaped with his life by climbing up a big tree, where the furious beast had kept him for a whole day and night, guarding his prisoner with extraordinary assiduity, and using at the same time the most cunning devices to induce him to descend so that he could attack him, sometimes pretending to sleep, and at others going away a short distance. Luckily the man was not deceived, and stuck tight to his tree. This man also declared that the base of the tree was all scorched by the fiery horn of the beast, when, in its rage at not being able to get at its prey, it charged the tree again and again and scored the bark with its horn.

The invulnerability of the beast was not so well authenticated, as nobody seemed to have had courage enough to attack it; but then, as John Smith very well knew, the skin of a rhinoceros is so thick that it wants a good deal of killing.

He was very anxious to go after this beast, and persuaded ‘Che Alang to find out all about it. The latter, however, was much averse to the expedition, by reason of its danger, but being over-ruled by his guest, he made arrangements for the journey, first sending a quick messenger down-stream to the chief of the district where the rhinoceros was said to be, to get everything ready, so that they could go after it the same night they arrived, otherwise the moon
would be too old to give enough light for their purpose. 'Che Alang was most particular about keeping this expedition secret especially from the Penghulu of his own village. He did not say so openly, but John Smith could see very plainly that he was suspicious of the Perak officer, who had extra reason now to consider him his enemy. 'Che Alang very much regretted that the Queen of Patani’s token of authority, the *changi putri*, had been seen in his guest’s hands although it had not been used officially, for he was afraid that there was little chance of hiding the fact that his guest was there with the Queen’s authority, and Perak Malay though he was, he evidently rather favoured Patani rule, and especially was he proud and fond of his guest.

They started before daylight the next morning in 'Che Alang’s trading boat, as if they were merely going down-stream with a load of canes, and the *changi putri* was carefully hidden under the floor of the boat. 'Che Alang and his men, however, were all well armed, and the little swivel guns, called *lelas*, which the prahu carried, were placed ready for emergency with a good supply of powder and ball. It was, of course, an unheard-of thing to travel about in those days unarmed, but 'Che Alang seemed to make a point of being particularly well prepared for this journey, and when he took his place beside his guest in the covered part of the prahu which served for a cabin, he told him that he was suspicious that perhaps the Perak officer might attempt to do him some injury, although he thought it would be difficult for him to persuade any of the people of the village they had just left to attack him. He was, however, certain of one thing, and that was that a messenger had been sent down-river, probably for instructions.

They got down te stream safely, landed at the Penghulu’s
bath-house early in the afternoon, and were escorted by him to his house, where arrangements were made for them to start for the hot springs almost at once, as they wanted to get there and send back the elephant on which they were to travel, before dark. 'Che Alang, the Penghulu, John Smith and one of the Penghulu's followers were to be the party to wait for the rhinoceros. They got to their destination well before dark, and then proceeded to make their arrangements for the night.

First, the elephant was taken along the edge of the open space where the hot springs had killed all vegetation, and from the top of his back they saw the track made by the rhinoceros as he came nightly to wallow in the hot water. It was a well-beaten path, and from the freshly-broken twigs it was plain that it had been used only the night before. The Penghulu pointed out the great size of the footprints in the soft clay. They were, as he said, almost as large as the marks made by the elephant they were riding. It was a lovely spot, an open glade in the dense forest, perhaps five acres in extent. On two sides it was bounded by a high limestone bluff, rising like a gigantic white wall two hundred feet sheer from the level of the ground, with great creepers and shrubs springing out of its crevices and clinging to its precipitous face.

The hot water bubbled up all over this open space, which was indeed neither more nor less than a small lake of hot mud only slightly covered with water, from the surface of which light clouds of steam continually rose and floated in the air. The only signs of life were some splendid green-and-black-striped butterflies, skimming from side to side of the glade, now soaring to the tree tops and then darting after one another in insect warfare.

Their elephant stepped gingerly along the edge of this
hot mud lake. He evidently enjoyed the warm feeling in his feet; for he expressed his satisfaction by pleased guttural purrings in his trunk, and by sucking up through it the warm water, with which he bathed his sides and belly; but sometimes he inadvertently dipped his trunk into a pool which was especially hot; his disgust and astonishment were then very amusing.

The elephant was ultimately drawn up close to the limestone wall, and then they became aware of an irregular hole in the face of it into which they all scrambled. They found themselves in a small cave overlooking the glade. The elephant was sent back to the kampons, and its driver was instructed to come for them early the next morning. Then they made their arrangements for their night watch. It was just getting dusk when they scrambled into the cave, the entrance to which was about twelve feet from the ground. It appeared from the outside just like an irregular hole in a sheer white wall of nearly two hundred feet in height. The cave was small, sloped downwards, and twisted like a spiral staircase to another opening level with the ground, behind an irregular buttress-like projection. The floor was strewn with boulders and broken stalactites, so that it was not a very comfortable place to abide in. The hole by which they got in was screened by some bushes and hanging lianas.

John Smith had his flintlock musket, and he had lent old 'Che Alang a fine matchlock which he had brought with him from Patani. The Penghulu and his follower had no arms except the inevitable kris and a strong, broad-bladed spear each. They were astonished at the firearms; and even 'Che Alang, although he handled the matchlock with a good deal of reverence and some pretended knowledge, only held it by way of compliment to his guest. He confessed that
he was afraid to fire it and had refused to have anything to do with it when they went after the tiger. They ate their meal of cold rice and dried fish which they had brought with them, and settled down as comfortably as they could for their night watch, with plenty of siri to chew, and nothing else to do but wait.

But oh! the beauty of the scene and the enthralling interest of the surroundings, as the shadows of evening quickly gathered over the lovely glade! The sun went down, almost, it seemed, a dusky curtain was drawn across the scene; and as the gloom gathered, John Smith fancied he could see the Fairy Princess, the mythical mistress of the imaginary padi fields, gliding out of the forest shadows with her troupe of attendant fays and sprites to disport themselves in the warm waters of the spring. He could, in his mind's eye, follow their fairy footsteps as they tripped over the soft, warm mud, never sinking into it, nor leaving any track on its surface. Not wanting, either, was music for their revels, for the schrill cicada piped out a high-toned measure, accompanied by the deep bass notes of the great bull-frogs, which rived in the cooler mud on the outskirts of the glade, where vegetation commenced to assert itself. The great mantis, also, which lurked in the hollow bamboos, out its diapason at intervals, and the intermittent twitterings and contented cries of birds going to roost mingled with the "tipta-bau" of the goat-sucker, as he started on his nightly hawking amongst the insects,—a bird which at the exact and proper moment calls the good Mohamadan to his "menghib" prayers, as punctually as the cry of the muezzin from the tall minaret in some Eastern city of palaces, or as in that very country the mungkim of the Malay mosque beats the slackened skin of the great drum, first with measured beats and then with muffled, confused taps, that
sound far and wide in earnest appeal to the nonchalant worshippers of Malaya.

And then it was almost dark; the sun had disappeared, and his consort of the night had not yet risen above the horizon; stars started into light like huge glow-worms, but not with sufficient power to conquer the gloom. It was not twilight, for there was too marked a change between the garish light of the day and the sudden fall of night. Seeming as though there was no time for animated Nature to sink to repose, the afterglow of the setting sun had faded out almost in a minute, and the pall of night had closed down, pricked out only with the innumerable stars of the tropics. And so passed two hours, short ones enough to the interested watcher and listener in the forest. And then the glory and splendour of the moon forest-glade! All in a moment it came. First the white light filtered through the trees on the opposite side of the open space, causing ghostly shadows to move with ghostly quiet and slowness over the shimmering water and mud of the hot lake, and twisting into fantastic shape the wreaths of white steam which ever rose and drifted about over the level surface, from points where the hot water bubbled up from the depths and spread out to make the quaking lake of water and mud. Truly the poetic trend always present in the imagination of the indolent and lotus-eating Malay, was justified in peopling this lovely scene with fairies and sprites, and in picturing a fairy princess as their leader and quite in accordance also with their practical common-sense, was it for them to attribute her presence and being to the necessary requirements of life; she was there to plant padi for food, for life and poetry could not exist without animal sustenance. Higher and higher rose the white moon, until, in almost an incredibly short space of time, she overtopped the trees and looked down
on the open glade, bathing everything in light, and causing ugly logs of fallen timber to appear lovely, and mud and slime to glisten like shot silk, spread out like a floor of iridescent glass on which fairies might dance with propriety. The white wreaths of steam hardly showed now, the whiter light of the moon seeming to absorb them, and only their attenuated and ghostly remains could be distinguished. Soon animated Nature, as if awakened by the increasing light, reasserted and disported itself, following these ghostly harbingers of the drama in the tropical forest.

First came a pair of porcupines. A mighty monarch of the forest, a tree with a straight and branchless bole of near a hundred feet had fallen from the edge of the glade and stretched out over the moonlit, glittering mud. It looked like a white and ghostly bridge, for it ended abruptly where its crown had decayed away and disappeared under the mud, succumbing to the disintegration of time and to the powerful jaws of white ants. Along this white bridge the porcupines advanced. Timidly and in short runs they came, stopping at intervals, and sometimes retreating to the forest; but finally, reaching the end of the great log and squatting on their haunches like two great squirrels, they sat in the full moonlight some ten feet above the surface and ate their evening meal of hard-shelled-jungle nuts, which each had brought along in its mouth. The sound of their gnawing teeth reached the listeners in the cave, and ever and anon could be distinguished the faint skirl of their tails, as they caused their quills to vibrate, either in warning each to the other, or in anger at the thought of interruption, for they often stopped to listen to some fancied indication of danger.

Soon they were joined by a family of sambhur deer. First the lordly stag stepped out of the shadow of the forest,
elevating his muzzle until his horns lay back on his shoulders. He sniffed the warm air for any sign of danger, and then with stately steps advanced farther out into the moonlight. Again, throwing up his head he uttered his barking, bell-like note of invitation, to call his family to the enjoyment of a wallow in the soft, warm mud. Timidly they appeared, two does, each with a fawn at her heels; and carefully they searched about for a convenient place, not too hot and not too cold, until, satisfied with their choice, they sank down in a group and rolled and wallowed in delightful abandonment.

A long interval passed, until presently there was a cracking of branches and the sound of a heavy advance, which made John Smith clutch his gun with nervous fingers. But no! not yet was the expected quarry to come into view, although the sound came from the direction from whence he was expected. This time it was a mighty bison, with his harem of three cows and two calves, that burst out of the trees and tangled undergrowth. Great and truculent-looking beasts they were, and twice the size of the heavy black-and-white domestic cattle of Holland, John Smith thought they must be. With a snort and a roar the angry-looking bull first dug his horns into the mud, and then, taking no notice of the herd of deer, he chose a wallowing-place for himself and his family; and the soft, warm mud soothed them also to rest and contentment. And all the time an interminable line of great fruit bats sailed across the open sky to some distant feeding-place, away far in the forest. Thousands must have passed, because for hours, each time John Smith lifted his eyes to the heavens, still they came and disappeared in the distance. Two huge white owls with great staring eyes twice or thrice essayed to fly into the cave, but with their night-sharpened vision they perceived the occupants,
and retreated to an ancient adjacent tree, where they perched and hooted indignantly. They were the only visitors to the glade that became aware of the presence of unwonted intruders, and they told not the news to the rest, but at last sat and discussed it between themselves in soft purrings and subdued hootings. Most likely they had a nest with young somewhere in the darkness of the cave.

Long ere this, the three Malays, who had not felt the charm of the night so keenly, and to whom each incident of the forest drama was but a customary thing, had curled up in sleep, and John Smith alone, with eager eyes and strained senses, watched each ensuing event, and waited patiently for the expected other visitor to the glade. Easily he could have shot a bison or a stag, but he would not; and indeed so entrancing was it to watch these strange denizens of the forest as they lived in their own natural place, and as no white man had ever watched them before, that he doubted, even if the fiery-horned rhinoceros wallowed before him within easy range, whether he could find it in his heart to disturb the natural order of events by firing at him.

And thus well on towards dawn he waited and watched before the mighty beast arrived on the scene; and then he saw it not. There was a heavy tread and a crunching of small branches as it slowly advanced, cropping the tender shoots as it came. John Smith awoke his comrades, the smouldering match of 'Che Alang's gun was coaxed into a glow, and they had time to train their guns on the track by which at other visits the beast had entered the glade. Then, with finger on trigger and with poised muskets, they waited whilst one might count three hundred slowly, and then — well then they laid aside their guns and stared each other in the face, for there was nothing to fire at.
They heard the slow approach, nearer and nearer, until their nerves were strained to the utmost pitch of excitement, and their fingers grasped the guns so hard that the flesh seemed one with the iron, but they saw nothing. Nearer and too near came the unwieldy tread, until it passed right under their well-chosen post of observation; and as if in derision, the great beast rubbed its rough side along the solid wall under the mouth of the cave, gave utterance to a satisfied grunt, and passed on round the corner of the buttress to wallow there out of sight of its enemies.

Easily, if they had had time to change their positions, could they have stretched their bodies out of the hole in the wall, and have thrust their broad-bladed spears into its back, and with safety, for it could not climb up to them; but it passed by and they did not even see it. Gravely the Penghulu and 'Che Alang agreed that he was kramat and ber-tua (sacred and invulnerable), and that it was useless to try to harm such a beast; so they curled up again to finish their sleep, and the eager white man was left to watch and hope that he would come out again into the open mentally promising himself that if he did he would not fire at him, nor awaken his friends, but just watch him as another incident of that eventful night.

But he did not come forth, and soon dawn came instead, and with it a great awakening of birds and insects. One by one, in the order in which they had arrived, the different groups stole off into the depths of the forest; and long before the sun was near enough to his rising to quench the moonlight, the glade was once more clear of its nocturnal visitors, and with the first rays of the rising sun their elephant drew up under the mouth of the cave.

The disappointed hunters descended and easily found the wallow where their escaped quarry had spent two or three
hours. There they saw his track into the forest, and still another evidence of his supernatural affinity was then forthcoming, for his wallow was a double one, and his tracks showed that he had as a companion a sambhur deer. Once more 'Che Alang and the Penghulu looked wise and asserted the awful character of the beast; but a sneering remark of the elephant driver, to the effect that the women would laugh at the return empty-handed of the great white hunter, was enough to set both John Smith and his faithful friend, 'Che Alang, thinking what should be their next proceeding.

John Smith proposed following the track until they came up with their game, while 'Che Alang rather favoured digging pit-falls in the track by which it had entered the glade that night and previously. The Penghulu, on his part, agreed to do whatever his visitors wished, so long as they killed the beast, of which his people were now in the greatest fear and dread. So both alternatives were agreed to. The elephant was sent back for a party of diggers and tools; and the hunters, after eating a few handfuls of rice, started to follow the trail. And now the white hunter writes that he was not quite so pleased with the reputation which he had established, for it was obvious that he must be the leader of the little string of four, who were to follow the trail single file through the forest. He was consoled a little by 'Che Alang, who said that the rhinoceros would certainly only have gone a short distance, and would be found in a wallow in a thick, shady part of the forest, certainly within half a mile of the hot springs. This was a little consoling; but half a mile of tracking with naked feet — for quiet was absolutely necessary — over ground which was not entirely destitute of thorns, with the constant expectation of being charged by a ferocious beast, and the improbability of being able either to get out of his way or
to shoot quickly enough to stop his headlong rush, was not calculated to make a man who had had little experience of the work exactly comfortable, and he takes some credit to himself that he went through with it without allowing the others to see his nervousness. Very slowly and cautiously they crept along the track, stopping to listen and to peer into the forest at every few steps, and prepared to dash behind trees to avoid a sudden charge. Before they had gone half a mile they came up with their quarry, or at least nearly so. There was a sudden rush in the forest in front of them, as the heavy beast got to his feet and bolted, luckily perhaps for the hunters, not in their direction.

John Smith records that he thinks he might have fired his gun if he had seen the brute; but perhaps he would have thrown it away and provided only for his own safety by getting behind the nearest tree. At any rate he was devoutly thankful that the rhinoceros, by going the other way, saved him from running the risk of lowering his prestige before the others.

Well! the quarry was gone, and it was hopeless to think of going further after it now that it had been once disturbed. However, they followed the trail up to the wallow, where it had lain back to back with its friend, the sambhur deer. The impression of both their bodies was quite distinct, and its cowardice in running away, instead of attacking its enemies, was accounted for by the two wise Malays, who were both quite certain that it had become timid because it feared for the safety of its friend.

So far it was not so very unsatisfactory to our friend: he was never a great hunter, and was perhaps more pleased with what he had seen than if he had killed the rhinoceros, and especially so as his friends were quite content to applaud his courage in making the attempt.
By the time they had returned to the cave and had eaten a more substantial meal, the elephant came back again from the kampong with a party of men and with some tools; so they at once proceeded to dig and prepare four pitfalls in the most likely places; after which they returned to the Penghulu’s house, where they spent three days, John Smith in ingratiating himself with the people, and ’Che Alang in forwarding that praiseworthy object.

On the second morning of their stay word was brought in that the rhinoceros was in one of the pitfalls, and they went out to secure it. A single shot carefully planted in its brain through the ear dispatched it, and all the credit was given to the white man for the kill. The horn was even hacked off and presented to him. Now this was no mean concession, for rhinoceros horns were in all Malay states a royal perquisite and were be supposed to be immediately taken to the King, the Penghulu or chief of the district being responsible for their safe delivery. In this case, the chief, when he presented the horn to John Smith, eased his conscience by saying he gave him the horn to forward to the throne, diplomatically refraining from saying which throne. But this was to cause trouble hereafter.

The rhinoceros was not, after all, such an important beast as was stated, for it was not more than the average size and certainly possessed no supernatural attributes; but as with the tiger, the slaying of it gained the slayer great credit, and when it was cut up to be divided amongst the people, the skin and flesh of the face, properly the portion of the local chief, were carefully smoke-dried and presented to the white man with the customary homage due to chief. This special portion was considered the pick of all the meat, and the recipient ate broth made from it for several weeks, and found it most nourishing.
There was no Perak agent at this place, and the people openly said that they were as willing to accept Patani as Perak for their overlord, so here at any rate the Queen's agent was able to congratulate himself that he could report favourably to his mistress. It took them two days to pole up the river again to 'Che Alang's house, where they were cordially welcomed home and a good deal applauded as brave hunters.
CHAPTER XXVI.

On arrival they found the Perak official still staying with the Penghulu and now most anxious to ingratiate himself with John Smith. He ignored the fact that the latter was an accredited agent of the Queen of Patani, and pretended to believe the account that he gave of himself, namely, that he was a merchant travelling about to trade and establish mercantile connections with the chiefs of the country, for their mutual benefit. This was, of course, only pretence, because the Penghulu, who had received him at first and had seen the changi putri which he carried, had, because of that, apologised for not entertaining him, giving as his reason that he was entertaining a Perak agent and was afraid that there might be difficulties; and in fact everybody in the place knew all about it: indeed it was the real reason why the gentleman from Perak had not attempted to become friendly with him.

But now all was altered, and every day Inche Ahmad — as the gentleman was called — made a point of spending as much time as possible with his rival, trying to persuade him to go down the river to visit the King of Perak. He extolled his country to the utmost, and enlarged upon the power and glory of his King, whom he represented to be one of the most potent monarchs of the earth, a lineal descendant of Iskander-al-Zekernain (Alexander the Great); or rather he ascribed to him a much more miraculous ancestry.
He told the history of the first Malay kings from whom the King of Perak claimed descent. It was an interesting tale, and John Smith took the pains to write it down shortly in his notes.

It appeared, from Inche Ahmad's tale, that Alexander the Great once made a descent on to a hill, called Bukit Maha Meru, in the State of Menangkabau in Sumatra. He was riding on a white cow which flew through the air. At the time of his descent, the country which was governed by patriarchal chiefs, not by kings, was very prosperous, being noted for its fine rice crops; and two daughters of the chief of the district were engaged in reaping the padi. His arrival caused miraculous manifestations to take place. The corn turned to gold and the leaves and padi stalks to silver all over the hill padi fields. The two young women also were especially honoured, for as soon as the cow touched earth, she vomited, and from the vomit sprang two young and handsome men, beautiful as fairies.

These strangely-born men were immediately dubbed princes by the puissant monarch who rode on the cow, and were ordered to take the two women to wife, which they did, and from them have sprung the long line of Perak Kings, even down to this day. Much more did 'Che Ahmad tell John Smith of the glories of Perak, its monarch and his riches.

He said that tin could be had in any quantity and at a very cheap rate, and instanced the fact that two years before some white men in great ships — a different race from the Feringhis who held Malacca, and who were detested by all Malays — had sailed up the Perak River from the sea and had started trading; but they had had to buy their tin very dear, as the chief of the port was a very shrewd trader, and also because the tin passed through so many hands that of course it was dear at the mouth of the river.
But if, on the other hand, a trader bought the tin up country, he could take prahu loads of it down river and store it until his ships arrived to take it away.

John Smith took the opportunity to let 'Che Ahmad know that it was his own friends who went up the Perak River, and that he also was with them. It was a good opportunity to forward the interests of the house of Neccy, and to impress him with the an idea of the importance of the white race, in exchange for the tales he had told of Perak's greatness.

He had no intention at all of wavering in his loyalty to the Queen of Patani, but at the same time he did not see any use in openly declaring his mission, as, if he did so, 'Che Ahmad would have no choice but to declare his enmity, and use his influence with the Prince of Raman to have him arrested, or even killed. Che Alang had already ascertained that the messenger, who had been sent down river by 'Che Ahmad on John Smith's first arrival, had returned, and had brought some word from the Prince of Raman, what it was 'Che Alang could not find out; but at any rate, to it might probably be ascribed the altered behaviour of 'Che Ahmad.

'Che Ahmad, finding that all his endeavours to induce John Smith to go downriver and visit the King of Perak were without avail, now proposed that he should send the rhinoceros horn down to the King, hinting pretty plainly that it was of course necessary for him to do so, because the King of Perak was now supreme in Raman, and the royalties all belonged to him.

For a long time he evaded this question in different ways, urging at last that he wished to keep it himself as a trophy of the first rhinoceros he had ever had a hand in killing; but he said that, if it was really due to the King of Perak,
he would, when he visited that State, most certainly deliver it up, and at the same time ask for permission to purchase it from the King. With this promise 'Che Ahmad professed to be content; but they found out that he had sent other messages down the river, and 'Che Alang did not disguise his anxiety from his guest. He told him that 'Che Ahmad had been sounding him as to his own loyalty to the King of Perak, and hinting that, as the white man came from Patani, it was his duty to keep a watch on him and report to the King's agent if he found him doing anything to damage the King's authority. 'Che Alang declared that he was quite indifferent himself whether the Queen of Patani or the King of Perak held sway in Raman; he was a trader and had nothing to do with questions of state, but of one thing he assured John Smith, and that was his loyalty to him personally. He was his guest sent by God, was therefore under his protection, and his honour required that he should defend him with his life, which he would certainly do, whether he was attacked by common robbers, the wild beasts of the forest, or even by the King of Perak himself. His life was more sacred to him than the lives of his wife or his children, and besides all that, he had cause to love him as a son, as also had his wife; and as for Si Andak, the child of his adoption, his guest could judge for himself whether she would easily brook any injury being done to her friend, whom she now looked upon as her own guest; while even the little maid Si Uteh would fight tooth and nail in defence of her comrade in many a forest ramble and expedition in search of fish or mussels or water snails, when she and her sister had playfully compelled him to assist them to bail out some hole in a stream. On these occasions they had got their bodies and scanty clothing saturated with water and so be — plastered with mud, that the frolic
always ended in a plunge in the clear river, and such a frank washing-up in company as would probably have greatly shocked the prim Duch maidens and their mothers whom John Smith used to know, and who seemed to him now to be but poor and insipid members of the great human family, compared with the children of Nature with whom for the last two or three years of his life he had associated.

Who would live in cities and cumber himself with the stiff doublet and hose of so-called civilization, when the forest and the tropical warmth invited him to its umbrageous shades, and when he need only don the scanty clothing which would allow free and unrestrained use of his limbs?

Who would worship his God in the most gorgeous cathedral built by man's hands, in set terms and phrases, in prescribed attitudes, and using gestures and genuflexions according to the dogmatic ordering of self-appointed religious leaders, when the forest glade and the open plain, the margins of the most beautiful rivers, or the groves of mighty trees on the tops of tropical hills, invited him to be still, and in lonely contemplation to worship the All God of Nature?

How compare the busy and dishonest traffic of Europe, its crude and selfish race for supremacy, and its disregard for anything except getting the better of one's neighbours with the suave and polite intercourse of Asia, where the defeated in a game of intrigue, or even of a trade rivalry, can console himself that no insult was exchanged in the contest, nor anything said or done to make either side regret, except the loss of the game?

Where is the modesty of behaviour or apparel, in the suggestiveness with which the civilized man or woman — often by deforming the human body — directs attention to some particular point of his or her personal beauty of form or feature, as compared with the almost unclothedness of the
child of Nature, in the warm zone of the earth, whose scanty drapery is carelessly and frankly disposed about her person, with no thought of anything except to cover the body a little, because other people do so?

And it is quite certain that the law of marriage, whereby one man and one woman are irrevocably tied together for their natural lives, be they suitable or unsuitable for such a thraldom, is better than the easy and flexible rule of less highly cultured peoples, who know no constraint, but join and part as freely and frankly as the birds?

Where in all Europe would he find the man who was willing to sacrifice not only his life, but his family also in defence of his guest? The touchy and punctilious honour of the West, which could take fire at a sneer, would perhaps flinch at the prospect of such a sacrifice in defence of the "stranger within the gates."

The proud Castilian might offer the keys of his house to his guest — a ceremony which he had adopted from the Moors who had over-run his country — but which both he and his guest, even while the offer was made, knew was only an empty form; yet how much more thoroughly had the unsophisticated Malay caught the spirit of the custom from his Arabian teachers.

It only wanted the spice of danger which realised now threatened him, to make his present life perfect, and willingly would he have stayed to see it through; but there was the danger to his friends to consider. It is true that not a hint of this fell from the lips of old 'Che Alang Pekan, but it was very evident that it was there and imminent; and so he made up his mind to leave his pleasant quarters and seek some other village. Indeed, if he was to effectively continue his mission, it was now quite time that he did so. He had as yet only tried the temper of two places, and
they had pretty unanimously declared for his mistress, for 'Che Alang was quite certain the Penghulu was more in his favour than 'Che Ahmad's, whatever he might think of the merits of the two States; but of course he was unable to declare himself all the time the latter was staying in his house, where he had taken up his abode apparently more or less permanently and as if by right, living, he and his followers, free of charge, and behaving in too arrogant a manner to quite please his host.

'Che Alang was of the opinion that it would be safer for his guest to absent himself for a while and await events a little. He did not think that 'Che Ahmad would venture to use violent measures to coerce his rival in any way, because there was too strong a party against him, and also he had probably got his orders to try and persuade the white man to go to Perak.

There was a high officer of state from Perak stationed at the Court of the Prince of Raman, under whom 'Che Ahmad and two other Perak officials were acting in different parts of the province; but 'Che Alang was quite certain that even he would not dare to offer violence to one whom he could not help knowing was a friend of the Queen of Patani. What he was afraid of was that, as soon as he had had time to get a messenger to the King of Perak, the latter would order him to arrest, if not to kill, John Smith, and would send a sufficient force to over-awe his friends. Therefore the best way to avoid this was by leaving the field clear to 'Che Ahmad.

'Che Alang, it will be remembered, had grave suspicions that his daughter, 'Che Long, had been stolen by somebody in the service of the Prince of Raman; and he thought that if he could get away from the village he would be able to institute something in the way of a search for her.
If the Prince had got her, she was without doubt in his palace and safely guarded; but even safely guarded captives are sometimes rescued, and 'Che Alang was very much in hopes that the Semangs who came from Patani would assist in the work of searching for her. There were also the Patani men, but some of these men had to be sent back to Patani with a letter to the Queen, explaining how the mission was getting on.

So John Smith wrote a long letter to the Queen, giving her all the news, and assuring her of the friendly feeling of the Malays in two important parts of the province. Also he told her all he could about the Perak agents, and advised that she should send two or three officers of some standing to assist him in counter-acting the Perak influence. He thought she should send a mission at least twice as strong as the Perak one. He finished his letter by assuring the Queen that he held the rhinoceros horn — which he would not trust to his messenger — on her behalf, and would defend it with his life until he was able to deliver it into her own hands.

Then one morning, having previously informed 'Che Ahmad that they were going on a trading expedition to a tribe of Semangs, who had collected a lot of rattans and wood oil in the hills four days' journey away, they started on two elephants, with a third loaded with rice for the wild men and for their own food. Probably 'Che Ahmad did not believe that they were only going to trade, but he said nothing, and did not even express surprise when he heard that 'Che Alang's wife and two daughters were going with the expedition. It was, after all, a fairly common thing for women to travel with their husbands on such journeys, and 'Che Alang certainly thought that his family would be safer with him than left at home in charge of his slaves.
Si Uteh was now getting on towards marriageable age and was safer under the personal care of her foster parents, for one child had disappeared because she was more than ordinarily pretty, and both Si Andak and Si Uteh bid fair to be very attractive magnets.

Si Andak, of course, had now an efficient protector, but as she was not a married woman there would be no crime in enticing her away or even abducting her. She was mistress of her own person, and not the property of a man. A father's claim was small. He was supposed to be paid a prescribed amount when his daughter was married; but the fee was never paid. It was called a debt, and nothing more was ever heard of it unless the man divorced his wife, when it would cause a quarrel perhaps, and even then would not be paid. At their first camping-place they met by appointment the Patani boatmen, and the following morning three of them were sent off with the letter to the Queen of Patani. For two more days they travelled into the forest and slept in camps hastily prepared for them by their remaining boatmen. Then, about the middle of the fourth day, they came to a Semang camp, and found their Patani Semangs amongst a tribe with which they were friendly. John Smith found these people very pleased to see him, as soon as they got to understand that he was a friend of the Queen of Patani.

They were real savages, living on the smaller animals, birds and reptiles, which, they snared in the forest, with an occasional feast of fish, and now and then a pig or deer brought down by their very efficient bows and arrows; but flesh food of any sort was not very common with them, and they mostly subsisted on wild fruits, roots and leaves found in the jungle.

They were brisk and active little people, not nearly so
small as the African dwarfs, but much shorter than the Malays, brownish black in colour and with curly woolly hair. Dress was almost absent amongst them, consisting perhaps of a girdle of leaves or grass, and in some instances of a chawat, or loin cloth, of beaten bark. They had no houses, because they never seemed to stay more than two or three days in one place, and they slept under overhanging rocks, in caves, or when such places were not available, they built slight shelters with boughs or palm leaves. But they were proud and quite self-satisfied. A few of them knew a little Malay, but except the four who came from Patani, they could not converse with any fluency. They claimed all the country as their own, but admitted that they had allowed the Malays to have the use of it. They were friendly with the Patani Malays, as well as with the Siamese; but they expressed great detestation of the Perak Malays, because they were connected with the Senoi or Sakais, who were their hereditary enemies, and with whom they were always at war, pitting their bows and arrows against the others' blow-pipes and poisoned darts, which weapons they disdained, declaring them to be cowardly and unfair.

Under these circumstances, when the Semangs understood that the Prince of Raman was negotiating with the King of Perak to deliver his country over to that potentate and repudiate his vassalage to the Queen of Patani, they were very angry indeed, and declared that it should not be; for it seemed that they claimed not only to have a voice in the administration of the country, but also in the appointment of the Prince who ruled it. Here was, then, perhaps the best way of all to counteract the influence of the Perak agents, who were trying to coax over the Malay chiefs and people. After consulting 'Che Alang on this phase of the
question, John Smith determined to take the Semangs into his confidence, and endeavour to use their influence to further his object, so far as he was able.

'Che Alang himself was not so much interested in that part of their expedition as he was in the recovery of his daughter, and he thought he saw a means of attaining his end in the bad feeling which the Prince's present action would cause between himself and his Semang subjects.

The chief of the little clan of wild men with whom they were staying was called up, together with the four Semangs from Patani, and the bundle containing the changi putri was solemnly unrolled in their presence. The four Patani Semangs were called to witness that they had been ordered by the great Queen to guide the white man to Raman and thereafter do his bidding, defending him with their lives; and they also witnessed that the changi putri had been delivered into his hands by the Queen herself, in full council of her ministers, and that she had there and then delegated her authority in the province of Raman to him.

When the Semang chief understood that the reason of this mission was to bring the Prince of Raman to his proper sences, and make him return to his allegiance to the Queen, he expressed his entire approval, and said he was sure all the Semang tribes would agree with him. He therefore proposed that they should move farther into the forest and hills, to a more convenient and central place and there call all the Semang Chiefs together and consult on the matter. As it happened, it was nearing the time of their annual fruit feast, and it would therefore be a good opportunity to get the people together.
CHAPTER XXVII.

Accordingly, the next morning the elephants were early picked up and loaded with their human freight, and then the company, augmented by the little clan of Semangs and their chief, moved off to find the head chief of all the Semangs in that district. For three days they travelled, picking up small parties on the road whose whereabouts had been discovered by observing the position of their fires at night time. As each party was found, John Smith was formally introduced and his *changi putri* displayed.

Little Si Uteh and Si Andak were intensely interested and pleased with the journey. They would, if their foster-mother had allowed them, have cast off their clothes and have emulated the Semang girls in their savage games and pursuits, but 'Che Alang considered that it was necessary to sustain the dignity of the superior race by a somewhat distant and careful demeanour. As for the white man, he was by 'Che Alang accredited with almost superhuman attributes, and the wild people were in consequence a little afraid of him.

They ultimately found the camp of the head chief of the Raman Semangs, and on understanding the object of John Smith's mission, this important personage fell in entirely with the view that the Prince of Raman was acting beyond his powers in transferring his allegiance from Patani to Perak, without first consulting the Semang chiefs.
The chief promised that, when all his people had assembled for the annual fruit festival, and to do honour to their gods, Kei and Ple, he would hold a council and see what was best in the opinion of his people to be done under the circumstances; but for his own part he promised John Smith that, if the Prince persisted in his present policy, the Semang tribes would certainly refuse to acknowledge him, and as they were the real owners of the soil, he would quickly find himself a Prince without any land, and not that only, but as the Semangs greatly outnumbered his Malay subjects and paid him a large tribute in produce of the forest, he would also find that he had a greatly reduced revenue and very few subjects left.

'Che Alang, however, told him that he must not depend too much on the Semangs, as their power was very limited. He remembered once the Sakais in Perak had tried to assert themselves, but had been very easily quelled; and he explained that these wild tribes were only tolerated because they were useful to make slaves of, and to do the rough work for the Malays in the forest; their assertion that they were the proper owners of the soil might be true, but the fact was not taken much notice of, and certainly it never deterred a Malay Raja from doing what he pleased.

That might all be true and probably was, but John Smith thought the experiment worth trying, and at any rate it would be interesting. The Semangs seemed a strong and well-armed people, and if they had pluck enough, their fine bows and arrows would make no mean mark in a pitched battle. Then there was the fact which he had learned in Patani, and found confirmed here, that they certainly had a voice in the election of the subsidiary princes, even if not in that of the Ruler of Patani. The latter was not perhaps quite so closely allied to the wild people as the
former, but from the great Queen herself down to the meanest peasant there was a strain of Semang blood leavening the Malay-Siamese stock, and that could not be quite ignored. He therefore made up his mind to follow up this opportunity, at any rate to some further development, and decided to settle at some future period how far he would encourage the wild men to rebel; it would depend greatly on what chance there seemed of success.

The place chosen for the fruit festival was a moderately high hill, standing in the centre of an elevated table-land, which in its turn was surrounded by higher hills. John Smith understood that this particular site was always used if the head Chief of the district wished to call his clans together, because its central position allowed the signal fires to be seen from every direction, and moreover it was an ancient rallying place of the people.

The first night after their arrival a large fire was lit on the hilltop, and was kept blazing for about an hour. It was then put out, and no light was shown for an interval of an hour. Then it was re-lit for another hour, after which it was put out permanently. This was done for three consecutive nights, which was the signal that the clans were to assemble.

The signal was well obeyed, for very soon the people began to gather. Everybody, man or woman, arrived laden with fruit or vegetables, which they carried in baskets on their backs supported by strips of bark across their foreheads. Only the able-bodied men and women came as a rule, especially from a distance, as the children and old people were left behind, with perhaps one or two strong men or women of each clan to look after them, but even these in some cases followed on and arrived at the trysting-place a day or two after their stronger clansmen.

The festival was to be held on the site of an old hill
clearing, which as on every similar occasion, was carefully prepared by cutting down all the young growth and grass. This clearing was about ten acres in extent. The people laughingly alluded to it as the place where they sunned themselves once a year, and this was about true, for they were shade-loving folk, and very rarely came out into the open country; and even now, as they gathered to the meeting, they established themselves under the trees round the clearing. The first comers got places nearest their chief, and the later ones gradually filled up the circle, until the clearing was at last ringed round with little camps. The people slept and sheltered under the merest screen of boughs and palmleaves, and kept fires alight all night. They seemed to be always cooking and eating during the night, and all day they were away in the forest collecting food. By the Chief's orders, a house was built for John Smith's party. It was a queer, ramshackle-looking place, but the best the wild men could manage, and it was greatly appreciated; for whatever the wild men thought about it, certainly the more civilized Malays did like a little privacy, and were not accustomed to carry on all their domestic life quite so openly and devoid of shame as these others, who in that respect were not much more modest than goats or buffaloes.

The changi putri was displayed at the door of John Smith's house, and was in charge of old 'Che Alang, who constituted himself Chief Herald for the occasion, and each petty chief as he arrived was brought by the head chief to do homage to the insignia of royalty and to see the strange white man who was the great Queen's agent.

So far as could be estimated, there were certainly a thousand people present, of whom the greater half were able-bodied men armed with bows, a few of them also having wood knives of good steel obtained from the Malays;
but the majority carried small spears with blades of sharp-pointed bamboo hardened in the fire. If there was any courage amongst them, this was not an insignificant fighting force, and was one that might be expected to move about very easily, with the hard-working women to follow behind and keep it supplied with food collected from the forest.

The time had now come for the culminating dance and great fruit feast to take place to each clan built a large fire out in the open before its camping ground, and every man, woman and child spent the whole day away in the forest collecting fruit, which was deposited in heaps between the fires and the camps. There was also a great dressing up of the young men and women for the night’s performance. The head chief’s fire was first lighted about ten o’clock at night, after which all the other fires were started, and then the great dance began. Each clan was provided with a clumsy drum, made out of the hollowed section of a tree about two feet long, and one in diameter. Across one end of this was stretched the skin of a wild goat or monkey. These drums and some wooden clappers supplied all their music.

The young people belonging to the head chief’s clan commenced the game. They had dressed themselves fantastically in crowns and kilts of leaves and grasses, both sexes about the same, and as they had discarded their chawats, or loin cloths of beaten bark, they appeared more undressed than usual. They came out of the camp and drew up in groups before the elders of the clan and the visitors. Then first the young men danced energetically for a short time, to the monotonous beating of the drum and a sort of chant sung by the young women; and after this the young women took their place and did their share to the same accompaniment. Their dance consisted chiefly in swaying their bodies and arms in time to the music, not altogether ungrace-
fully, but their posturing was perhaps not quite so modest as it might have been. John Smith learnt that the dance was chiefly responsible for the marriages in the tribe, and was perhaps instituted for that purpose. His little friend Si Uteh had begged to be allowed to join the head chief's troupe of girls, and had indeed dressed, or rather undressed, herself for the purpose, but when she showed herself to her foster parents, her sister and her friend the white man, she was quickly smacked and ordered to resume her proper clothes, for she certainly made much too pretty a savage to be trusted amongst the others.

It was the rule for dancing parties from the different clans to visit one anothers camps, indulge in a short dance for their hosts' amusement, eat some fruit and then go on to another camp; and this lasted nearly all night. Marriages within the clan were not allowed, and young men had to select their brides from clans other than their own: the penalty for breaking this law was death.

John Smith and the two Malay girls visited all the camps under the guidance of the head chief. It was very interesting to watch the love-making of the young people. As seemed to be the custom in this part of the world, the girls always made the first advances, and the advances made were certainly quite unmistakable; there was no false modesty displayed by either sex: the intention was the finding of suitable mates, and when the affinity was thought to have been discovered, it was the maiden, not the man, who was the wooer, and her wooing was done quite openly, and was openly reciprocated.

It was well on towards dawn before the fires dwindled out and the camps became quiet, but the savages were all alert again before the sun was above the horizon. For two more nights the tribe feasted and danced, and spent what
part of the day could be spared from the search for food in sunning themselves in the clearing.

During all this time the head chief was very busy, consulting the different clans as to the proper measures to be taken to bring the Prince of Raman to reason and to a proper sense of his obligation to take counsel with the Semang chiefs before he gave away his country. There was no doubt about the opinion of the clans on this point. Perhaps the very fact of finding themselves all together and in such large numbers, gave these wild men an undue idea of their own importance, but certainly when the head chief told his visitors that his people had determined to make the Prince give up his plan of becoming a vassal of Perak, and return to his allegiance to Patani, even 'Che Alang, little trust as he put in the power of the savages, thought that perhaps they might exercise some slight influence, especially if there was a chance of the Queen of Patani backing them up. But he believed that it would be very difficult to persuade them to actually fight real Malays. If the King of Perak ordered his Sakai subjects to fight, probably the Semangs would give a good account of those foes, but they would be afraid of the Malays.

They awoke one morning to find the place deserted, except for the head chief's clan, for before daylight had quite taken the place of darkness they had gone away, and the busy camps were only indicated by the vacant hearths and the squalid-looking shelters which had been erected. It was very depressing to walk round the clearing and see none of the picturesque groups of savages squatting round their fires and finding employment in a hundred trivial occupations, which, though they seemed of hardly any account, yet made up the whole sum of existence to these denizens of the forest. The young men would be laboriously
fashioning combs of bamboo, or stringing rows of bright-hued seeds to please their brown brides, who in their turn were plaiting strips of rattan or a black thread-like creeper, to make belts for the husbands they had won. The old men would be mending bows, or with excessive expenditure of energy, and with infinite pains, forging iron arrow heads with stones for anvil and hammer, while the old women were beating out cloth from the fibrous inner bark of the upas and the bread-fruit trees.

Their primeval forest, the mother who bore them and nourished them in her leafy shades and gloom, had again taken them to herself; her children had gone back to her protection, to continue their restless nomadic existence, in a never-ending struggle for the preservation of what, at first sight seemed a life so poor that it was hardly worth maintaining, and for the continuance of a race which, if it were wiped out of the scheme of the Universe, would hardly be missed, so unimportant seemed it to be.

They had gone to work their way gradually through many miles of forest, where only they could find a path. They had agreed to travel by many different routes, so that they should not interfere with one another in the important search for food, and then to meet again at a place within one day's journey of the Prince's kampong, where each clan, with a supply of rattans, resin or wood oil, should wait in its camp, as if prepared to pay a tribute to the Prince. That was the agreed upon programme, which the Prince would undoubtedly have no cause to suspect meant anything more than the usual payment of tribute after the fruit festival of his wild subjects, for he had often before been gratified by such a contribution, which constituted a large item in his revenue.

And now the head chief proposed to his guests that they
should move on to the rendezvous by slow stages; so the elephants were caught, and a start was made. As the rice was all eaten, the rest of the journey would have to be performed on the same food as the Semangs were used to, and the Semang chief was gratified by being given the provision elephant for the use of himself, his wife and his family. He was a proud man, travelling thus in state, for it had been a rule never to let the wild men ride on elephants for fear it should make them think they were as good as the Malays.

Slowly and carefully the great beasts plodded on through the forest day by day with the head chief's clan of about fifty men and women, some of whom kept behind, and some in front of the elephants, searching for food for the night's camp. Every day John Smith was regaled with some new dish, sometimes it was a monkey, dropped from the top of a high tree by an expert bowman, or the white meat of the tail of a great lizard, while now and then a wild pig would be brought in. All these things were *haran* (forbidden) to 'Che Alang and his family, and even the omniverous white man could not quite manage to share a great feast the wild men once made off a twenty-foot-long python.

Then sometimes the good Mohamadans had their innings, mouse deer were caught in snares, and often they had peacocks and other beautiful game birds that it seemed a shame to eat; and then at times fresh-water snails or mussels would be brought in, and these 'Che Alang's old wife and the two girls would industriously extract from their shells and stew with spices and sour fruits, making a delicious dish. All these things were *halal* (allowed) to the follower of the Prophet.

Sometimes 'Che Alang and John Smith would have long
and interesting arguments as to those animals which "split the hoof but do not chew the cud", forbidden by the Mosaic law or concerning certain birds like woodpeckers, which are makro (inexpedient) according to Mohamadan law; but generally in these cases, if hunger was sufficiently pressing, and nothing but wild roots and leaves were found to satisfy it, the law of the Prophet was set aside; indeed, in John Smith's experience, more than once in such cases the forbidden pig itself had been re-christened "the short-legged goat", in an attempt to quiet the sensitive conscience of a hungry Mohamadan.

Nine days they thus travelled through the forest, not making long journeys, for they did not wish to arrive before the rest of the tribe, who would possibly be delayed because of collecting the produce of the forest for the pretended tribute to the Prince.

On the tenth day, instead of continuing their journey, the Semang chief desired his friends to stay in camp and allow him to go forward without them. He expected, he said, to meet his people one day's journey ahead, and when he had done this he would arrange for the best way to deal with the Prince of Raman, whose kampong was only about thirty miles away. It was certainly better under these circumstances that John Smith's presence should not be known, or perhaps the Perak Commissioner, who was known to be staying with the Prince, might arrange to do some mischief.

The chief and half his followers therefore went forward for another march, leaving the other half of the people in camp. The chief promised to inveigle the Prince into the forest with as few followers as possible; and 'Che Alang made him understand that the women of his harem were also, if possible, to be decoyed out; for he felt certain that
his daughter, 'Che Long, would be found amongst them. This also the chief promised to do his best to bring about.

After the Semang chief had started, the rest of the party proceeded to arrange their camp, as it was probable that they would have to stay some days before the arrangements for receiving the Prince could be made. It was not decided when the chief left exactly what was to be done, because it was not certain how many followers the Prince would bring into the forest with him, or even if he would be persuaded to leave his kampong at all, while if he did come, the Perak officer might insist on coming with him. Everything, therefore, had to be left to chance, and the only arrangement which could be made was to choose several of the most intelligent Malay-speaking Semangs to carry messages between the two camps, so that John Smith and his party might know exactly what to do and be prepared to act on an emergency.

After six days' waiting, a messenger came from the Semang chief at the Prince's kampong, to say that the Prince of Raman with some of his women and the Perak commissioner intended to pay a visit to the Semang camp the next day, and that the chief meant to inveigle him out to the smaller camp where the Patani mission was. The messenger also said that his chief was very angry with the Perak man because he had laughed at him, and that he was going to send another messenger on the morrow.

Accordingly the next morning a second messenger arrived, and reported that the Prince with his four wives, some other women and six followers, and the Perak officer with two followers, had arrived at the main camp with four elephants; that they intended spending some days there taking account of the tribute brought in by the Semangs and that the Prince had ordered the Semang chief to make
his people arrange for a dance in three nights' time, in order to amuse the Perak officer. The messenger also said that his chief was very angry about this. On being questioned, he could not tell whether 'Che Alang's daughter was with the Prince's party or not.

John Smith now conceived the idea of capturing both the Prince and the Perak officer and taking them prisoners over to Patani for the Queen to deal with. It would probably lead to a war between Perak and Patani, but this he thought, would be sure to occur sooner or later, and he knew that two important Raman kampong, as well as all the Semangs, were in favour of Patani, so he had very little fear for the result.

'Che Alang was willing to assist in anything, if only he could get back his daughter, and he wanted before anything else to ascertain if she was with the Prince's party. The messenger was therefore sent back at once to the Semang chief, to make arrangements to meet John Smith and 'Che Alang secretly in the forest, not very far from the large camp, so that they could have a conference and try to arrange some way of carrying out this project. About four hours after this messenger had returned, they started themselves with half-a-dozen Semangs, taking with them one of the former messengers to show them the most convenient place to wait for the Semang chief. After travelling all night through the forest by torch-light, they arrived within what was understood to be about a mile of the big camp, and there halted, whilst a man went forward to call the chief. The latter came out to see them at once. He was quite willing to fall in with their views, except that he wanted to kill the Perak man because he had treated him so contemptuously; but he wanted to make him understand first that even if in Perak the Malays had so far mastered
the Sakais as to take no notice of their claims to consideration, the Semangs of Patani were more powerful, and would hold their own as heirs of the soil, even to fighting for their rights.

They agreed that the Prince and the Perak agent, with their women and followers, should be enticed out to the smaller camp to see a dance and inspect some more tribute, which, the Chief would persuade them, could not be brought down to the large camp. 'Che Alang, however, was most anxious to make certain if his daughter was with the Prince's other women, and so, after they had made all their preparations for the capture of the Prince and the Commissioner, with their people, he went back with the chief to his camp, and by hiding in the forest near the place where the Prince's people went down to the river to bathe, he at last caught sight of her as she came along with the other women, and his suspicions as to her whereabouts being now confirmed, he was content to return to his own party and patiently await the development of the plan they had agreed upon.
As soon as they got back to their camp, they made preparations for the reception and capture of their proposed visitors. The elephants were sent back a day’s march, and the whole camp was moved forward a little off the old site, so that on the arrival of the Prince’s elephants there should be no suspicious signs to show that anybody but Semangs had used the place. Two huts were hastily built, one, a fairly large one, for the Prince, and a smaller one for the Perak Commissioner. John Smith and 'Che Alang arranged to stay with their family in the old camp, and only come forward, either to help effect the capture, or after it had been made, as might appear best. Things were arranged only just in time for their reception. A cordon of Semangs was posted round the open space before the huts which had been built, for feer any of the visitors should escape, for it was evidently imperative that the Prince’s capture should not be made known any sooner than was absolutely necessary, because, as soon as his own immediate followers knew it, they might be expected to move Heaven and earth to find him again; and of course the taking prisoner of the Perak Commissioner was a deliberate act of war.

For this reason precautions had been taken to account for the Prince’s absence from his own kampung for at least a fortnight: this would give them a good start before even search was thought of, and they hoped to get their captives past all the inhabited country, and well on their journey towards Patani, before people were awake to the fact that
their ruler had been abducted. 'Che Alang was for letting the Semangs actually make the capture, and it seemed better that it should be so, because they would thus have committed themselves to an act hostile to Perak, and could not thereafter draw back from the responsibility.

'Che Alang’s wife could not resist the temptation of hiding at the edge of the small cleared space in front of the hut built for the Prince, in order to watch the arrival of her daughter and when the time came, she was perhaps a little gratified to see that 'Che Long was seated on the same elephant as the Prince, and was thus given precedence over his other four legitimate wives, who were all packed together on a second elephant. But that was, as the old lady well knew, always the way, for even legitimate wives had to give place to the last new favourite. She would have been very much happier if her daughter had attained to the more orthodox position of a legitimate wife.

The anxious old mother had seen the Prince's elephant drawn up to the hut prepared for his reception, and her experienced eyes had detected the fact that her daughter's appearance was that of a woman, who, if she were a legitimate wife, would have no reason to dread the gaze of the world; but she was only a concubine, and her condition was therefore not quite so satisfactory.

The Prince and his followers disappeared into the hut, and his followers proceeded to make it more comfortable and fit for a few days' occupation. The Perak chief also alighted, and was apparently about to arrange his own hut, by putting into it his own sleeping mats and pillows, together with the very few other articles which make up the small amount of impedimenta with which a Malay always travels. Amongst these was the spear with a fringe of white horse hair fixed just under the socket of the blade,
which was his token of authority from the King of Perak.

Unluckily for the chief, as he was attending to his arrangements, a troupe of young girls, fancifully dressed up in the lightest of grass and leaf kilts, as if prepared for the dance, passed close beside his hut, and the poor man — perhaps envious at seeing the Prince with so well-filled a harem, whilst he was wifeless — seized the arm of the nearest girl and tried to pull her into his hut. It was an almost unprecedented thing for a Malay to do, and swiftly did punishment follow on his wrong doing. The girl called out something, and immediately an alert Semang, armed with a strong spear having a hardened bamboo blade, jumped out of the forest and remonstrated with the Malay, but unavailingly, for the latter passed his arm round the girl's waist and drew her towards him. This was, perhaps more than the Semang could endure, for he suddenly shouted out something in his own tongue and stabbed the Perak man in the abdomen with his bamboo-headed spear; then, as if at a prearranged signal, the little cleared space and the huts prepared for the visitors were surrounded by armed Semangs, who promptly laid hands on every soul of the Prince's party, and disarmed and bound them with rattan cords, which were by some mysterious means forthcoming just at the right moment.

The poor Perak man was killed almost immediately, for as soon as his assailant stabbed him, two or three other young men rushed at him also and thrust their bamboo spears into his body as he fell.

The head chief of the Semangs, with a party of his most important chiefs of clans, called to the Prince to come out from his hut with all his women and followers, and on his doing so, his followers were promptly bound, elephant drivers and all. It was lucky for all parties that before the fracas occurred the elephants had been hobbled, or perhaps they
might have got away, when they could only have been caught again by their own drivers, who would have been sure to have thus escaped and probably gone back to the Prince's own kampong, and informed the people of what had taken place.

The ladies were grouped together with a guard placed over them. But not until everything had been made secure did the wily old Semang chief send a messenger to call John Smith and his friends, and explain to him what had been done, and why the Perak chief had been killed.

The Queen of Patani's agent, having ascertained from the messenger exactly how matters stood, thought it better now to disclose the object of his mission. He therefore carefully dressed himself in his European dress, buckled on his trusty Spanish rapier, and taking his changi putri in his hand, went back to the camp with the messenger, and approached the captive Prince of Raman.

He found that chief tremendously surprised at the course of events and also very indignant, but when a man with a white skin, a beard and a moustache, and dressed in outlandish clothes appeared, his surprise was changed to real anger; and on that apparition addressing him in his own language, and informing him that he was a prisoner and must prepare forthwith to start on a journey to Patani, to answer certain charges of rebelling against his Suzerain, the great Queen, his indignation gave place to temporary madness, and drawing his kris he suddenly plunged it into the naked body of a Semang who stood close beside him; then, shouting out the name of Allah, he sprang forward in the direction of his group of wives, and would, without doubt, have soon justified himself as a true Malay by providing a sacrifice as a fit preparation for his own death. He did indeed do something towards attaining this end, for as he rushed, the
Semangs who were guarding the women gave way, frightened at his appearance.

Truly a terrible sight he was, as he frantically dashed at the horrified group of women, shouting, "I am the King of the jungle! I am the Great Bull Elephant, and the wild Sheitan of the forest!"

In one hand he flourished a wavy *kris*, and in the other a little sickleshaped dagger, designed for ripping up the abdomen of an adversary. Already he had reached one of the women, who, hoping to escape, had left the group and was starting away towards John Smith; but it was not to be her fortune to avoid her fate, for in two or three springs, her husband, gnashing his teeth and shouting inarticulate curses as he advanced, stabbed her in the back with his *kris*, and as she fell backwards into his arms, plunged his little crooked dagger into her abdomen and literally disembowelled her, leaving his weapon fast fixed in her breast bone, where it had become jammed as he sharply drew his hand upwards in the act of inflicting this horrible second and unnecessary wound.

He cast her aside, and drawing out his *kris*, stood glaring around for the next victim, a horrible and maniacal figure, covered from head to foot with the freshly-shed blood. It was almost as much as John Smith's nerves, weakened by his rough life and the tropical influences, could stand; but feeling unlimited trust in his own powers, and perhaps being encouraged by the feel of his clothes, which he had not for some time worn, he drew his sword and steadily advanced on the maddened chief, calling on him at the same time to throw down his weapon and surrender himself a prisoner, when his life would be spared. At first the Prince seemed a little cowed, but then perhaps suddenly remembering that this new opponent was an Unbeliever, whom at least it was
meritorious to kill, he crouched, and warily watched for an opportunity to make a successful attack. It was a real duel, but the odds were certainly in favour of the more civilised fighter, for his long sword gave him an immense advantage, and he could easily have finished the fight within a very short time if he had wished; but it was not his intention to kill the Prince unless it was inevitable; he would much prefer taking him a prisoner to Patani for the Queen to deal with. He therefore followed each movement and feint of his adversary with the greatest care, hoping to disarm him and so take him prisoner.

For some few minutes they circled round one another, each intent on finding an opening, until at last John Smith was able to accomplish what he wanted, and the Prince stood disarmed before him with the blood trickling from a wound in the back of his hand. But it was not after all so much the death of his adversary that the Prince desired, as it was to get rid of his own existence. The Malay, when he runs a-muck, seeks to give his neighbours an opportunity and a fair reason for taking his life because it is, in his opinion, a disgraceful thing to commit suicide, even if his troubles make it impossible for him to live.

That this was the Prince's desire was soon very evident, for no sooner had his opponent pricked the back of his hand, thus causing him to drop his *kris*, than, finding that he could not recover it, he promptly endeavoured to impale himself on the sword which menaced him, and was only prevented from thus ending his life by the promptitude with which his opponent dropped the hilt, and clasped him in his arms. The Semang chief, who had been watching the duel, now ordered some of his young men to assist, and the Prince was soon sitting on the ground, bound like his followers. The whole of the Prince's party was now secured,
and the four elephants were also prevented from getting away by the double rattan rings which confined their fore feet, so that they could only move about by lifting both feet, so that they could only move about by lifting both feet at a time, and thus could not escape.

It was time now to call a council and decide what to do next; so John Smith, with 'Che Alang and the Semang chief, sat down to discuss the matter.

After much deliberation it was determined to start at once up-country with the captives, and go right through to Patani as fast as possible, for it was quite certain that before many days were past the Prince and his party would be missed, and search would be made for them. It might be some time before what actually took place became known, but when the elephant tracks were traced going straight up-country, suspicion would be aroused and enquiries made, and the facts would leak out.

It was, perhaps, unfortunate that the Perak officer had been killed, as it would certainly cause the King of Perak to carry war into Raman, even if he did not consider it sufficient reason to send an expedition right into Patani; but then it had proved the loyalty of the wild tribes, who were, it was now quite evident, no inconsiderable factor in the State.

It grieved them all that the Prince of Raman took his captivity so much to heart. He was, apparently, a man of considerable intelligence and much influence in the district. His slightly curled hair showed the Semang blood in his veins, and even now as he sat in his bonds, his face distorted with passion, it could be seen that he was a man of some presence and with claims to be called good-looking, according to Malay taste. He was apparently about middle age and in the full vigour of life.
His three remaining wives were all youngish women, but none of them could be compared with 'Che Long as regards beauty or youth, and like the Prince himself, they all shewed traces of the Semang blood. 'Che Long, on the other hand, was of lighter build and prettier colour, and the brown of her skin seemed as if it was mixed with a little warm yellow, whereas the other ladies, like the Semangs who had captured them, had their brown dulled and deepened with a considerable tinge of black; also, 'Che Long's hair was long and wavy, and did not tend to twist up into tight curls as did that of the others.

The Semang blood was distinctly visible in these Raman natives, as it was right down the Patani River, and the difference between these people and the people who came from Perak, 'Che Alang's family, 'Che Ahmad and his chief the Perak Commissioner who had been killed, was so very marked that it set John Smith wondering whether this district, which the Raman people had occupied, should not after all properly go to Patani, as it was inhabited by the same race, in spite of the fact that the country drained into the Perak River basin.

In reviewing the occurrences of the last few days, he was especially struck with the acumen displayed by the Semang chief in laying his ambush and capturing the Prince of Raman; but what was more astonishing still was the way in which he had betrayed the Perak commissioner to his death. It was quite evident to old 'Che Alang also that, either because of some insult to him and his people, or because he looked upon Perak State officers in Raman as national enemies, the Semang chief had made up his mind to kill the man, and the way in which it had been done had been carefully planned: the man's character had been studied, and his predilection for women noted. Therefore the appearance
of the troupe of young girls just as he was going into his hut was not mere chance, any more than it was by accident that the bravest and most reckless of the young men were posted at the same place, and so were handy to avenge the insult offered to the girl. But nobody could blame the Semang chief under the circumstances for the Perak man's death, for he had obviously brought it on himself. When John Smith regretted it in speaking to 'Che Alang and the Semang chief, the latter carefully explained that he also was sorry, but that, as could be seen, he had no control over it, nor was the deed in any way done by his orders; it was the hasty act of a man who saw his wife insulted. But they saw an amused expression pass over the wild man's face as he gave the explanation, and they did not alter their opinion about the astuteness of the race.

'Che Long was happy in being resorted to her family, but she evidently also had some affection for the Prince. This was, after all, natural, for by whatever means she first fell into his hands, the fact remained that he was the father of her unborn child, and this gave him a claim to all the love a Malay woman has to bestow on a man. Devoted mothers and loving, as these women often proved themselves to be, it was most evident that the feeling subsisting between man and woman was always merely sensual and had to do entirely with sex; there was no real passion of love, as it is understood amongst more highly civilised peoples. Besides this, poor 'Che Long had for some time being trying to persuade the Prince to divorce one of his wives and marry her, instead of keeping her in the inferior position of a mere concubine, and now that one of his wives was dead, there seemed every chance of her wishes being fulfilled, if only she played her cards aright; and in furtherance of her
plan she begged to be allowed to attend to his hurt and comfort him generally.

John Smith saw no objection to this, if 'Che Alang thought she could be trusted not to assist him to escape, and as her loyalty to her own people was declared to be beyond doubt, he gave her some of the African salve to apply to the Prince's wound, and himself went with her and her mother to attend to him.

They found him very sullen, but he ultimately became a little less so, after his late adversary had explained his position to him and had apologised for wounding him. He said that he had no very great leaning to Perak more than he had to Patani, and had merely transferred his allegiance because he thought the Queen had neglected him, and that he should get more out of the King of Perak, who, he said, had sent him some very rich presents and had promised him more if he would swear allegiance to him. Finally, he asked that his hands might be unbound; but 'Che Alang advised that this should not be done, as he would probably do some further mischief if he were allowed to go free: at any rate it was not advisable to untie him at present, but in a day or two's time they might, perhaps, hit upon a plan to so guard him unbound as to make it safe.

And here the native cunning and the inherent politeness of the race was again exemplified. 'Che Alang brought forward the Semang chief, and together they did homage to the bound Prince and assured him that it was their wish to liberate him at once, but that the chiefs of the different clans restrained them, declaring that they must first take guarantees from the Prince that he would not give their country to the King of Perak, whom they declared to be descended from their mortal enemies, the Sakais.

Then, after the other elephants had been found, they
started on their long journey, the Semang chief leading the way, as he had promised to take them to the upper kampong where 'Che Alang lived in five days, which was half the time it had taken them to come down. The Prince's followers, as well as the two Perak men, were given in charge of a clan of Semangs, who were ordered to take them far into the forest, whence they could not hope to find their way home without the help of their captors. They were to be guarded until further orders from the Semang chief. The second elephant was loaded with the Prince's three remaining wives, none of whom seemed very anxious to attend to their husband. Perhaps they were frightened because of the very unceremonious way in which he had got rid of one of their number, or perhaps, since 'Che Long had been an inmate of his harem, they had had but little attention from him, and were accordingly disposed to sulk.

The third elephant carried 'Che Alang, his wife and the child, Si Uteh; the fourth, the Prince, who was carefully secured in his seat by rattan cords, but was made as comfortable as circumstances permitted, with 'Che Long, who was most assiduous in attending to his wants. John Smith and Si Andak shared the fifth elephant, and the other two were loaded with provisions.

They were careful to put the Prince on one of their own elephants and use his themselves, for fear any of them should make a dash to escape; but even if this had been attempted it is doubtful if they could have got away, because the party was escorted through the forest by the larger half of the Semang tribe, who were to travel with them until they found the prahu which John Smith had hidden on his journey across from Patani, and which would take some of them down the Patani River.

They determined to stop at the kampong where 'Che
Alang lived, and, if possible, secure the Perak agent, 'Che Ahmad, who was living there, and take him with them a prisoner to Patani. Sometimes John Smith changed places with 'Che Long and tried to make friends with the Prince, in hopes of persuading him before he left his own province to declare himself still a vassal of Patani. He told him that the two kampongs were, in spite of 'Che Ahmad's endeavours, still against the Perak alliance, and that if he would now declare himself true to Patani, without doubt the Queen would forgive him and take him back to her favour. The Prince promised that he would do this, and of his own accord promised to marry 'Che Long at the kampong when they stopped there. This was very gratifying news to 'Che Alang and his wife, but it was still a question whether they could trust him at liberty and with arms in his hands. The old Semang chief, who knew him best, would not take the responsibility of deciding, as he thought it probable that he would again try to wipe out the shame which had been forced on him by throwing his life away, as he had tried to do before.

They decided to take the risk, and as it was better when they had so decided that he should be at once released, 'Che Alang first asked him if he would take an oath that he would return to return to his allegiance to Patani, that he would not make any attempt on his own life, and lastly, that he would marry 'Che Long. All these things he promised faithfully, so he was at once released, and his weapons were restored to him. But the wily Semang chief did not trust him, and was careful to keep the best of his young men in close attendance on him. Moreover, he was not quite pleased with the proposed marriage, for he recognised that 'Che Long and her people were not of the true Semang descent; but he consoled himself with the recollection that the Prince
had already several heirs by his former wives, and it was not very probable that 'Che Long's child or its descendants would ever be Princes of Raman.

Two days after this they arrived at the kampong where 'Che Alang had so hospitably entertained John Smith, and it was with very considerable satisfaction that the good old trader welcomed his guests to his house.
CHAPTER XXIX.

The Prince was ceremoniously received and installed in the end of the verandah, where John Smith had once been the honoured guest of the house. The Penghulu was called and did homage. The Prince informed him that he had come to the kampong on purpose to celebrate his marriage with 'Che Long, the daughter of 'Che Alang, and ordered him to have a water buffalo killed at once for a feast in the evening, and to command the attendance of the Khatib and several hajis to be witnesses of the marriage.

The Prince then enquired where 'Che Ahmad of Perak was, and on his coming forward, the Prince told him that he was very sorry indeed, but he had to let him know that his chief, the agent sent to him by the King of Perak, had met with an unfortunate accident in the forest and lost his life; he had been attacked by some strange wild animals; and at the same time one of his own wives had also been killed, and he himself had been wounded in the hand. This was a most diplomatic and far-seeing statement for the Prince to make, and was well calculated to stop further enquiry. The natural inference to be drawn from what was evidently a fable, would be that the Perak chief had been too familiar with one of the ladies and they had both been killed in the forest, probably by the Prince himself, as his hand was wounded.

Che Ahmad was well aware that his chief was greatly given to laxity of behaviour with regard to women, and when the Prince turned to 'Che Alang and John Smith
with a sardonic smile and asked them to corroborate his story, they were so impressed with its cleverness that they both immediately vouched for its truth. And after all, the facts might be so twisted as to make it true; the Prince was a despotic monarch, and the Semang woman whom the Perak man had insulted was, if not his wife, at any rate so much his slave that he could have added her to his harem without any one daring to prevent him. Also, he was certainly in a maddened state when he attempted to run a-muck, analagous to a wild animal, and the wild Semangs were commonly considered by Malays only equal to the beasts of the forest. Moreover, this sort of sophistry was commonly practised amongst Malays to hide the shame of domestic crime. Of course the whole story would ultimately come out, but only after some time, and then it would be so garbled and mixed up with the fable that people would not know what to believe, and so it would sink into oblivion.

That matter being settled, the Prince went on to tell the assembly that, as it was evidently by the command of God Almighty, (Firman Alla-ta' Allah) that the Perak Commissioner had lost his life, he felt sure that the project of transferring his allegiance to Perak would be contrary to Divine command, and he had therefore finally decided to return to his proper Overlord, the Queen of Patani, and was in fact now on his way to do homage to her and ask pardon for not having attended her Dewan, with the other Princes her vassals. Then turning to 'Che Ahmad, he said it would be very well, he thought, under the circumstances, if he went with him. John Smith caught the Prince's meaning, so quietly going through the house he found the Semang chief, who was being entertained at the back, and told him to have some young men ready to take 'Che Ahmad prisoner, the moment he went down out of the house, and by no means
to let him have any communication with anybody, for fear he should send a message off to Perak.

When he returned to the verandah he brought with him both his own insignia of office, the changi putri, and also the ornamental spear which had been the token of authority brought from Perak; and first asking the Prince's permission to speak, he told the assembly that he had been deputed by the Queen to visit this her province of Raman, and to ascertain whether the Prince and the people did actually wish to repudiate her overlordship. He said that he was convinced they did not, but had been perhaps persuaded by the King of Perak's agents. He would now go back at once to Patani with the Prince, and tell the Queen that her province had returned to its allegiance. He intended taking with him to Patani the Perak Commissioner's spear as a sign that the people of Raman wished to have nothing to do with Perak, and he was very glad to find that 'Che Ahmad was going with the Prince. If anybody could persuade the other Perak agents who were in the province to go to Patani as well, he was sure the Queen would be very pleased indeed, and he knew also that the Semangs would arrange to help them on their journey.

'Che Ahmad looked very blank whilst all this was going on and soon after asked permission to retire, in order that he might make his preparations for the morrow's journey. The Prince accorded him leave, and 'Che Ahmad went down the steps, but at the bottom he was met by the Semang chief with ten well-armed young men, who politely persuaded him to go to John Smiths little house by the river, which, they assured him, had been prepared for him, and to which all his property had been removed from the Penghulu's house.

It was a heavy blow for 'Che Ahmad, who saw very plainly
that the chance of Perak was gone, and that Raman would have to be conquered by force of arms, if his master was desirous of obtaining the sovereign rights over it.

By the time all this had been done, it was getting on towards evening, and an appetizing smell was wafted into the house from about a dozen large, open iron pots, which had been set on furnaces hastily made of sods, and which were now briskly bubbling away and giving the company indications of good things to come. John Smith had several times passed through the house to the kitchen, and had been very interested in watching the process of converting the buffalo into the several different dishes which appeal to Malay taste.

Of course the Penghulu's head wife was installed as manager-in-chief of all the cooks, and she was ably assisted by several other gorgeously-dressed ladies of the place. These all sat in conclave at the back door of the kitchen, while on the ground below, a party of elephant-drivers and other men slaves cut the meat off the bones into convenient collops, which were taken down to the river to be washed, a very necessary process, for the meat had been thrown about in the dirt a good deal. When brought back from the river in baskets it was delivered over to a set of young women, who cut it up into little bits, separating the different sorts of meat into heaps for treatment: the solid meat of the hind legs was cut into long, thin strips to hang up in the sun for future use as jerked meat, "sun fruit," as the Malays called it; the cheeks and lips and some other tit-bits were salted down in jars, also for future use, for the good ladies had a considerable idea of providing for the future, and buffaloes were not killed every day; the liver and heart and some other pieces were cut into nice little square dice, to be converted into dry curry, and the intestines and the
fatter and more tender meat were laid aside for the curries, served with gravy and seasoned with green ginger.

Another set of more experienced and older women then received the meat into the kitchen, and rubbed into it the hot chillies, salt, shredded onion, garlic and spices, and put it into the great pots with the milky coconut emulsion, and at last the cooking vessels and their contents were handed down again to the ground and set on the fires to simmer and boil, until the aromatic odour filled the air and called in the neighbours to the feast. Special parts of the buffalo were cooked in different ways for chiefs and others according to their rank. A particularly soft stew of intestines and fat, considered good for the voice, was prepared for the ha'jis, who would chant the Koran presently, and the breast-bone, with the scanty meat and fat attached, was arranged in a bamboo frame and slanted over a heap of live coals, to be carefully grilled; this is the “Raja's meat”, and it is eaten very hot, with a sauce of chillies and salt mixed with green lime juice.

Just before sunset the order came from the kitchen that everybody was to sit down, and the long rows of mats arranged on the bare, beaten ground in front of 'Che Alang's house were soon filled with hungry guests. Then a procession of slaves appeared from the back with heaped-up wooden trays of smoking rice, and brass trays full of coconut shells, containing the differently cooked meats. These were arranged alternately down the space between the rows of seated guests, each of whom had provided himself with a clean square of banana leaf for a plate; and then, when all the dishes were set out, a reverend haji, „In the Name of God the Merciful and Compassionate”, asked for a blessing on the food, after which they set to work to eat it.

In the meantime, 'Che Long, the bride, was being dressed
and adorned by her mother in the house, and her sisters were being prepared to sit beside her as her supporters. Rich silks and jewels had been borrowed from all the neighbours to deck her with, and when she was placed on the nuptial throne beside the chief post of the house, and against a great pile of bolsters with gold and silver ends, she looked quite a lovely bride. Her sister wives were grouped behind her, trying to look as if they welcomed her to a share of their husband, his power and goods; but the prettiest item of the whole picture was dear little Uteh, who sat demurely at her foster-sister’s side, a step lower on the throne, holding in her hands a silver box containing some packets of betel leaf prepared for chewing, which presently it would be the duty of the newly-wed wife to eat with her husband, the Prince.

Si Uteh stared in front of her, with wide-open, great black eyes, her sweet pouting lips a little parted, showing her as yet undamaged white teeth — a most enticing little figure, and one well calculated to play havoc with the hearts of the young men who would presently file in to do homage to the bride and bridegroom. A very old lady sat on the left of 'Che Long, holding an open fan before her face. A vacant seat on her right was left for the coming bridegroom.

Word was sent out to the verandah that the bride was enthroned and waiting, and the Prince, who, with John Smith, the Penghulu and 'Che Alang, had eaten his own wedding feast in state, passed into the house and took his seat beside the bride. The Prince, probably because he was the Prince, had not been constrained to adorn himself, but sat down as he was in his travel-stained clothes; but he was a fine-looking man for a Malay, and of a martial appearance. He was in the prime of life, shorter in stature even than most of his subjects, but thick-set, with curly
hair and quick, black eyes, which never appeared to rest for more than a moment on any object, but continually seemed to search for a meaning in everything at which they glanced. John Smith surmised that the mania which had such a disastrous outbreak a few days before was perhaps not quite quieted, and trembled for fear of another catastrophe; but whatever thoughts were passing in the Prince's mind, the ceremonies of the marriage proceeded with due decorum.

The customary questions as to the property of the contracting parties were duly answered before the witnesses; the little fingers of the bride and bridegroom were linked together; the fan was lowered; Si Uteh passed up her box of siri, which the bride and bridegroom partook of together, and the actual ceremony was finished. It only remained for the people to come in, pay their homage, and deposit their offerings on the mat before the throne.

John Smith headed the procession. He laid down one of his guns for the Prince, and for the bride, who was a sort of a sister-in-law of his own, he put down a beautiful necklace of gold beads made in Patani, exactly similar to one he had given to Si Andak, and a roll of Chinese silk. His generous gifts were applauded by the group round the throne, and the Prince was evidently touched by the delicacy displayed in giving him such as fine weapon, and that only a few days after the late occurrence, when the donor had fought and disarmed him. After him came the Penghulu, and then the rest of the community. Some gave further lengths of cloth or silk; some, little nuggets of gold, and even small mat bags containing a gallon or so of rice.

When the ceremony of offering the gifts was over, the Penghulu wished for the usual dances and games to be performed, but the Prince refused to allow even the candle
dance to be executed; for he fell in with the view that they should start early the next morning on their journey to Patani, as it was essential that the Queen should be warned in time to prepare for an invasion from Perak, which the Prince anticipated, as indeed did all the rest who knew of what had taken place.

The string of seven elephants started early with their loads, after a good deal of rather angry talk on the part of the Prince's three older wives, whom he decided to leave behind, taking only 'Che Long. This was made a great grievance of, and it was only after he had threatened to divorce them that the poor ladies at last became a little quiet. They were then left in charge of the Penghulu, who had strict orders to keep a careful watch that they did not send a message to Perak, in revenge for the slight put upon them.

All 'Che Alang's family went, and also the Semang chief, whom John Smith wished to present to the Queen in order to ask her to reward him for his loyalty, the Perak officer, in charge of two of the Patani boatmen, occupied one elephant, and two were loaded with provisions and other articles. The commercial venture had not produced much in the way of elephant loads, but the merchant was returning with a prisoner, a captured staff of office, and a vassal of the crown, who had seen the error of his ways and was coming in to sue for pardon; so that his expedition had been fairly successful; and so far as he was personally concerned, not the least important item of his home coming was the new inmate for his own harem, who, although she was a little sorrowful at the thought that her undivided claim to her lord's affections was now nearly over, consoled herself with the remembrance that at least he had spent some months with her alone, and that after all she would
be as well off, and better, than most other women, for her master was a man of high rank, and would now, it was quite certain, be still more favoured by the great Queen.

Si Andak had known that her lord was already the master of two damsels, even before that night soon after his arrival, when they went together to commence their love story in the little house which he had built by the river, by way of a futile attempt to escape his fate — a circumstance which he was often playfully reminded of by his loving mistress.

They had a four days’ elephant ride over to the Patani River, which they struck some distance above the place where the prahus had been hidden. They then followed the river down until they found the prahus, and John Smith and the Prince, with their respective wives, embarked. There was no room for any more, so the others continued their journey by elephant until they arrived at the tin mines. There they got two other prahus, paying for them by loading the tin — which they were going to take down river — on their elephants, which followed on more slowly by the regular elephant track.

And so in a very short time they got to the Queen’s city of Patani, where they were received with great rejoicing. Si Andak’s reception by her sister wives was quite cordial, for these sensible girls looked at it from the point of view that, if it had not been for her attention to his comfort, he would certainly not have returned so well and happy as he did.

Plurality of wives and facility of divorce make for the good morals of the East, and especially does this apply to those races which profess the creed of Mohamad. The gentlemanly and conservative Malay has mixed up with his creed many old traditions and customs which are, perhaps,
not quite orthodox, and perhaps also he has some vices which are not found in the West; but taking it altogether, John Smith records that vice and immorality were not flaunted so openly in the streets of Patani as they were in those of London or Paris, and he shrewdly gave it as his opinion that abstinence from strong drink was chiefly the cause of the greater decorum apparent in the Eastern city.

The Queen called a council of all her notable chiefs in order to ascertain whether she might rely on their help to maintain her authority in Raman, and in order that her agent might explain what he had found out about the feeling of the people.

The Prince of Raman was called before the council, and had to answer for his action in allowing the Perak agents in his province. He was looked upon as a rebel, and most of the council considered that he deserved death, as also did the Queen herself; but John Smith begged for his life, saying that he was sure the Prince was not a rebel at heart, but that perhaps, living as he did, nearer the centre of Perak government than Patani, and in fact in territory that might be fairly claimed by Perak, he was unduly subject to Perak influence. Moreover, he had perhaps been rather neglected by his proper overlord; in fact, he told the Queen and her council very plainly that if they hoped to retain their authority in the distant provinces, they must do something more than require the chiefs to come in periodically to do homage and pay tribute. He also told the Queen and her council that great help had been given to him by the Chief of the Semangs, and advised that, if ever there was any fighting with Perak, these tribes should be encouraged in every way, as he was quite sure they would make most excellent 'forest fighters; nor did he forget to say a good word for old 'Che Alang; so that when these worthies
arrived a few days after with the elephants, they were treated with great honour. The Semang chief was accorded a fine fighting dress, the same as that worn by a Malay chief of high rank, with a spear and a kris profusely ornamented with gold, and he was also given the title of Stia Raja Balantara, or The faithful Prince of the Desert.

'Che Alang was also made an officer of the Queen's household, and together with his wife and Si Utëh was given a house within the Royal compound. The State council finally decided that the Prince of Raman should be punished by a fine of the four elephants which had been brought to Patani, together with their drivers, who were, of course, his slaves. Two of these elephants were claimed by the Queen as her share of the fine, one was given to John Smith, and the other to 'Che Alang; this was according to Malay custom, by which the half of all fines imposed by the King is claimed by him, and the other half is divided amongst the aggrieved parties and those who are instrumental in bringing the culprit to justice. The Prince was also deprived of his province and ordered to reside in Patani.

The Queen was very anxious to appoint John Smith Prince of Raman, and the ex-Prince also begged that he might be given the post, but some of the councillors were against this, as he was an alien and not of The Faith; and he himself also persuaded the Queen that he could not accept the post, because, as he reminded her, he could not take up a position which must be held permanently, and which it would be against the traditions of the country for an alien to fill. Moreover he said he felt convinced that the Raman people could only be properly governed by a Prince having Semang blood in his veins. He had now been nearly a year in Patani, and probably before the end of a second year James Neccy would return to the East, and would
want him to rejoin him, either in the proposed expedition against Malacca, if it was undertaken, or perhaps after an interval spent in trading, the ships would return to Europe; but, as he assured the Queen, he did not mean to stay there, for he had by this time quite made up his mind that he would spend most of his life in the East.

It was finally decided that the Semang chief should spend a month travelling about the different provinces, and sending drafts of the young men from the different clans of Semangs into Raman, with orders to his own people to move with them down to the present Perak frontier, so as to be in readiness to repel any invasion from that State, and also to send word back to Patani of everything which took place.

John Smith would, in the meantime, rest for a month or six weeks in Patani, and then, armed with the Queen's authority, and accompanied by about fifty fighting men, who were to form the nucleus of an army, he would also move down into Raman and be prepared to repel invasion. Besides this, in conjunction with the Semang and Raman chiefs, he was to proceed to find out the proper person to succeed as Prince of Raman; and when that man was found, he was empowered by the Queen to proclaim him, and put him in possession of the throne.

Old 'Che Alang was offered the post of Dato' Dagang by the Queen, in place of John Smith, who would be absent perhaps for another year, if not in Raman, then in the other provinces; but 'Che Alang asked to be excused from accepting the Queen's offer, as he had already agreed that, during his absence, he would look after his friends trading business, and endeavour to reduce the bulk by bartering the heavy and cumbersome goods for more compact and valuable merchandise. 'Che Alang was very capable of carrying on this sort of trade as he had been used to it all
his life, and being devoted to John Smith, the latter was quite sure that his interests would be safe-guarded. The old man would also be left in charge of his friend's household and family — not a light responsibility by any means — but he was thankful that the three young ladies were disposed to be good friends, and were all of them light-hearted, so that they were after all only like children, and with sweet little Si Uteh, they all soon looked up to 'Che Alang and his wife as equal to foster parents.

There was another household to stay in Patani which was not perhaps quite so contented; this was the very much reduced establishment of the ex-Prince; 'Che Long was very devoted to him, and did all she could to make him happy; but without doubt he brooded over his disgrace, and it was very probable that at some future time his homicidal mania would reassert itself and he would once more run a-muck. John Smith offered to take him back to Raman and see if the Semangs and Raman chiefs would have him again as Prince, but the Queen would not agree to this, and it was ultimately decided to send him to Siam with the embassy, to report that it was expected Perak was about to invade Raman, but that the Queen had made arrangements to repel the attack and would not require any assistance from her Suzerain.

The State council advised that this report should be made, so as not to seem to repudiate the Siamese rule and overlordship entirely; but at the same time neither the Queen nor her advisers wished to ask for assistance, and so lay the State under an obligation, if it could be avoided.
CHAPTER XXX.

The Semang chief had been about a month travelling through the provinces dependent on the great Queen, and had come back to Patani to report that he had persuaded the Semang chiefs whom he had visited, to send parties of their different clans into Raman to assist in repelling an expected invasion of the Perak Sakais. The Semangs, it must be remembered, did not recognise the Malays of either Perak or Patani, as races distinct from the aborigines, for the Perak Malays were Sakais, and the Patani Malays, Semangs.

The chief told the Queen and her councillors that at least five hundred men, besides women and children, were gradually moving down into Raman. They would travel slowly and as they moved from place to place they would steadily increase their store of preserved food, roots — macerated in water and grated with rattans to make them fit for human food, and then packed in joints of bamboo for ease of transport — the flesh of wild animals and fish dried in the sun, hard-shelled nuts, and others like chestnuts — all were collected; so that when they formed a junction with the Raman Semangs on the Perak frontier, there should not at any rate be a lack of food at first, in consequence of the assemblage of so large a quantity of people in a confined district.

The chief talked very proudly of going over into Perak
territory and not waiting for the Sakais to make their invasion, but the Queen gave him strict orders not to do so, and John Smith seeing that he was so bellicose and likely to start the fighting too soon, hurried on his own preparations and started a week after the Semang chief for Raman, after agreeing to meet him near the Prince's kampong, and the Chief promising to send back messengers if he found that the Perak people had started the war by coming into Raman territory.

The first thing to be done was to capture the other Perak agents, if they were still in Raman. The Semang chief was to rouse his tribesmen, and John Smith was to stir up the Malays, as each of them passed through the country. The lesser chiefs of the Malays, with as many followers as they could bring, and the Semangs were to collect in as large numbers as possible at the "Place of the Prince's palace," in order, ostensibly, to elect a new Prince; and when they were gathered there and the new Prince elected, the Queen's Commissioner would use his discretion as to carrying war into Perak, or merely providing means for the defence of the frontier.

Very proud were the three young ladies when they saw their lord and master mounted on his own elephant, and supported by the most famous war captain in Patani, take his ceremonious leave of the Queen, who came to the gate of her Palace richly attired and veiled, and attended by all her chamberlains and ladies to see him start — an honour which she had never before accorded to one of her officers.

Perhaps Si Andak's lips quivered a little, and her eyes grew moist, as he rode away. Poor Andak, she was fated never to see him again! Hers was a more romantic liaison than the coming together of the white man and the other
two girls, which was more or less by order of the Queen, although that connection had also turned out happily.

But the worst leave-taking had been in his own house before he went to see the Queen. Poor little Uteh! She was almost broken-hearted, for she had got to love her sister's lord with a passion which, in her innocence, she could not disguise. She was now over the age when girls are generally either married, or have entered into alliances, which, if they are not real marriages according to law, are the same thing made in Nature's own court of love. She clung to her hero, and vowed she would not let him go until he had promised to marry her on his return. She cared not that he had other concubines, nor that one of them was her own sister; she declared that if he did not take her as well she would kill herself.

John Smith did what he could to soothe her and to explain that it would be wrong for him to marry her as well as her sister, but nothing would satisfy her; and at last, instigated by her mother, he gave the desired promise. It was not at all an unusual thing for a man to marry two sisters, especially if the first one he had married proved childless; and it was expected of him, if the first wife died, for her sister then naturally took her place, without it being obligatory to provide a marriage feast. As the Malays put it, he merely "changed his sleeping-mat".

All these matters being at last settled, the little army made its start. All but about ten of the fifty soldiers went up-river in prahu's, taking with them a quantity of rice, which was to be deposited at the landing-place for the tin mines. With John Smith went ten elephants, carrying, besides the ten soldiers and the Queen's most trusted war captain, a further supply of rice. It was intended that the Queen should keep sending up rice in prahu's to the mines, whence
the elephants would carry it on to Raman. By this means, also, communication would be kept up between the Queen and her small army.

They hoped to be able to get more Malays from Raman for the fighting line, but if they found that Perak put too many men into the field for them to cope with, the Queen promised to send more regular soldiers. John Smith's men were all armed with guns of one sort or another. There were a few matchlocks, which the Queen had purchased of him, and she had also some of her own; but nearly half of the fifty men were armed with what were called hand guns, these were simply straight tubes of iron closed at one end and provided with a touchhole; very small canon in fact, about three feet long and carrying a bullet one ounce in weight. They were lashed to a stout pole and fired with a linstock, the end of the pole being held under the arm and the gun resting on anything which was handy. They were not very effective weapons, for there was no chance of taking aim; but the noise they made was calculated to frighten the enemy a little.

The elephants arrived at the mines a few days before the prahus, and John Smith took the opportunity to make arrangements for the Queen's prahus to go back down river laden with tin, and also to recruit a few more soldiers from amongst the foreign Malays who were working on the mines.

When the prahus arrived, he had all his elephants loaded with rice, and made all his men walk, setting the example himself. He was thus enabled to get a large supply of rice forward. He knew that the sight of plenty of food would be the very best means of inducing recruits to join his ranks; for it was a very common thing for the rice crop to fail, and for the people to be obliged to live for a whole season on tapioca root and maize, even if they did not
come down to the Semang diet of wild roots and fruits. A certain supply of rice had its attractions, therefore, for the people.

It was a tiresome march over into the territory occupied by the Raman people, and everybody was heartily sick of it before they arrived at the kampong where John Smith had stayed previously. The Penghulu was overjoyed to see them. He had been apprised of their coming by the Semang chief, who had, two weeks before, gone on towards Perak, and was very busy getting his men moved forward.

The Penghulu had heard that the other Perak agents had gone back to their own State, and that they had of course reported the death of their chief. The country generally was in a great state of excitement about the disappearance of the Prince, and had only just found out that he was in Patani; but what was of the most importance was that parties of Perak Malays had moved up to within a day's march of the Prince's palace, had there built stockades, and had sent word to all the chiefs that they were only the vanguard of a large army, which would be shortly on its way to devastate the country, unless due submission was made and tribute given by the chiefs to the King of Perak, who would then appoint a Prince to govern the country for him.

This was, after all, only the news which John Smith had expected, but he thought that most likely the great army talked about was a good deal exaggerated; still, the fact that stockades had been built was evidence that the King of Perak meant to do something. He therefore sent the elephants back to Patani with a request that about two hundred soldiers, and a further supply of rice should be sent on as soon as possible, and advising that more elephants should be procured, so as to augment the supplies of food,
for he realised that this would be the most important weapon to fight with.

He sent out messengers to all the chiefs to meet him at the Prince’s palace as soon as possible, with as many fighting men as they could muster; engaged prahu to take his stock of rice down the river, and went down himself with his fifty fighting men, to take possession of the palace, which he intended using as his own headquarters, at any rate until the new Prince was appointed.

He found the palace, and in fact the whole district, almost deserted, but the few people who were still about had made up their minds to accept the King of Perak’s ultimatum, and were already arranging to send their submission and tribute down the river. The Penghulu, or subordinate chief of the place, had been forced, he said, by the people to this course, but there was a whisper that it was not much against his inclination; in fact, from what people said, they were very much of the opinion that it was this chief who in the first instance instigated the Prince to offer allegiance to Perak.

John Smith found a goodly quantity of rice belonging to the late ex-Prince in his granary, and adding that which he had brought to the stock, he put a guard over it, and started to administer the country as Governor, pending the appointment of a properly elected chief.

He was not as yet strong enough to attempt even to get into touch with the enemy; but after less than a week three chiefs came in with about one hundred followers, and what was still more gratifying, his old friend the Semang chief arrived and reported that he had nearly a thousand men in the forest, along a line which could be communicated with by signal fires. The new arrival was quite sure that they could keep the whole of Perak out of Raman. He had
ascertained, he said, that there were three parties of Perak men, about one hundred strong, posted at different places, and that they had protected themselves by building stockades; and he gave it as his opinion that the King of Perak did really mean to invade the country, otherwise he would not have sent on these parties to entrench themselves. Meanwhile he strongly advised that the Queen be asked to send on more men at once, with plenty of rice. His own men, he remarked, were self-supporting, for they were attended by their women, who did all the providing. Finally he said that he wanted now to go right on into Perak territory and thus cut off the three stockades from their base.

This was wise advice undoubtedly, and as soon as more Raman Malays had collected and the election of the new Prince was finished, John Smith thought he would act on it; but the first thing to do was to provide for an actual and responsible head of the province, whom both Malays and Semangs would recognise and obey.

Not much difficulty was experienced in selecting the proper man, for a cousin of the ex-Prince was chosen by the Malay chiefs, approved of by the Semangs, and quickly installed in the palace as governing Prince. He took an oath of fealty to the Queen of Patani, as his overlord, before John Smith, as her representative, and the Raman and Semang chiefs. In addition, they made him swear not to admit any agent from the King of Perak into his province, and to do his utmost to stop the present invasion. When this was done he was installed in the seat of honour at the inner end of the palace, and all the chiefs did homage to him. John Smith now changed his quarters and went to live in a house near by.

It seemed advisable that the newly-installed Prince should not take the field personally against the invaders, at any
rate not for the present. He was therefore put in charge of
the rice supply and the communications with Patani. He
was himself a man of some considerable property, owning
four elephants and a great herd of water buffaloes. His
elephants were immediately sent off after rice, and he
offered of his own free will to kill his buffaloes, two or
three every week, to keep the fighting men supplied with
sun-dried meat. This was a very great help, because, although
the Queen of Patani sent over bundles of dried fish, it
would be difficult, if the campaign lasted any length of
time, to keep the men contented on dried fish and rice
with the scanty vegetables which they were able to procure.

Having thus disposed of the business of installing the
Prince and providing for supplies and communications, John
Smith was now anxious to take the field; so he arranged
with the Semang chief to make a move and, if on examination
it seemed practicable, to attack the stockade which was
nearest to the Prince’s palace.

He took out with him twenty-five of the Patani soldiers
and one hundred Raman men. These latter were armed
only with spears, swords and krises, and of course were
useless except at close quarters. But he depended a great
deal more on the bows and arrows of the Semangs than
he did on them. He himself went unarmed, except for his
sword, for the sake of travelling light, but his musket was
carried behind him by a man so as to be ready for an
emergency. The stockade was said to be close to the river,
and the expedition therefore embarked in prahus, which
carried many of the little swivel guns common all over the
Peninsula.

When they got to within about five miles of the fort,
John Smith landed and met the Semang chief, who had
agreed to wait for him with about one hundred men. With
these forest warriors he made a detour, and after a hard march through the forest, struck the river some distance below the fort, in order to cut off the retreat of the Perak men, supposing that the Malays, who were to attack from the prahus, succeeded in driving them out.

Carefully they crept up to the fort under cover of the trees, until they were within two hundred yards, and then the Semang chief and John Smith went forward alone and got so close that by climbing a tree they could look right over the palisades and see what was going on inside.

The Semang chief was for calling up his men and pouring in a flight of arrows from the tree tops, but that would have been very dangerous, as the Perak men seemed to be well supplied with fire-arms, and would easily pick off the bowmen from such exposed situations. It seemed better therefore, to await the attack from the prahus, and then, when the defenders were engaged on that side, perhaps in the confusion a few Semangs might get into the trees without being noticed, and do a good deal of damage; but if the fort was attacked from both sides, there would be no apparent way of escape for the inmates, who would thus become desperate and be sure to do much damage before they succumbed to numbers. They had prahus on the river, and would, without doubt, take to them if they found themselves hard pressed, and if they could get to them. Then, again, they might make a sally to attack the Raman prahus when they would be exposed to the Semang bowmen, and would inevitably be caught at a great disadvantage. He persuaded the old chief, therefore, to stay quiet in the tree and watch how they bore the attack from the river, before he summoned his men. The cunning old man had, however, a scheme of his own, and slipping down from his perch he went back to his men and arranged that twenty of them should come
forward into the trees if he called them. He had time to
do this and to get back to his post of observation before
the attack began.

They waited patiently for another hour before anything
occurred, and then they saw a small prahu, with three men in
it, coming round a bend of the river as fast as the paddles
could make her move through the water. As she came on,
the men shouted out a warning, which sent into the fort
about twenty other men, who were fishing along the bank
of the river and getting timber to strengthen the fences.
These all rushed into the stockade, which was soon alive
with them manning the walls and handling their weapons.
It was not long before the Raman prahus came in sight,
and then the firing commenced; but it was very plainly to
be seen that both sides were more intent on fireworks than
real fighting, for the prahus stopped at such a distance off,
in order to keep out of range of the hand-guns and little
cannons used by the defenders of the fort, that their own
artillery was equally ineffective. John Smith quickly saw
that if the fight, or rather the pretence of a fight, was to
keep on longer in this style, the only effect would be to
waste his precious ammunition; so he asked the chief to
call up his bowmen.

Three times the old man uttered the long-drawn-out “küau”
of the argus pheasant, and in response a score of naked
men, with bows as tall as themselves, stealthily crept up
until they were under the grove of big durien trees, in one
of which John Smith and the chief were hidden. Quietly
and as agilely as the long-armed apes of the forest, these
dusky warriors swarmed up the trees, two or three in each,
until they were all in position, hidden in the thick leafy
branches, but every one of them having a good view of
the backs of the Perak men, who were too intent on their
artillery duel with the prahu to notice what was going on behind and above them.

So far not a man either in the boats or the fort had been hit, but a most interesting lot of gun practise had taken place, and many shouts of defiance had been exchanged, for each side had freely cursed the other, collectively and individually, and with much obscene vituperation had referred to the progenitors of these brave warriors. But the defenders of the fort did not seem inclined to sally forth and chase their assailants, which they might easily have done, as their prahu were all in the river close to the fort, and so far as they knew they exceeded them in number, besides being better armed; nor did the attacking party dare get any nearer, apparently for fear of their lives. And so, probably, the laughable battle would have gone on until all the ammunition was expended, if the Malays had been allowed to conduct it on their own lines. But John Smith was getting tired of it, and so was the old Semang chief; so at a hint from the former, the latter uttered an imitation of the sharp discordant scream of the great brown hawk which was everywhere so common, and twenty bow-strings twanged almost together, for the intent little warriors were all alert waiting for the signal. Then the Perak men knew what fighting meant, for ten of them went down, and five or six more staggered about, but they all knew that they had their death wound, for the arrows were poisoned with the juice of the deadly ipoh, and not one of those who saw them doubted for a moment but that the dreaded Semang bowmen had come into the fight. A second flight of arrows struck down more of them before they realised where the assault came from, and that it was not now an affair of splintering off chips from their palisades with half-spent bullets fired from a safe distance. Then with one accord
they left the walls, to seek shelter in the huts which were built in the centre of the stockade.

Seeing this, John Smith shouted to the assailants to dash in and storm the stockade; but he could not persuade them to desist from their futile fireworks, although it was not now even replied to — afterwards the famous Patani war captain said they never heard him; — so he scrambled down the tree and ran along the river bank until he got to where the Perak prahus were moored, and getting into a little dug-out he paddled up to his own force, at the imminent risk of his life from the Raman bullets, which seemed to be aimed at anything rather than the fort. By dint of shouting and gesticulating he at length succeeded in stopping the waste of powder, and when he got up to them and told them how little damage they had done, the Patani captain did not seem at all astonished, but triumphantly pointed to his own force and showed him that not one of his men had received a scratch.

This was all very well, but it certainly was not war, as the white man understood it; so he called the boats together and told the men how the wild Semangs had already killed over twenty of the enemy, and had got the garrison penned up in the huts. Thus he made them ashamed of the little they had done compared with what the wild men had accomplished, and urged them to discard their guns entirely and storm the place spear and *kris* in hand, promising them that he would lead them, and that the Semang bowmen in the trees and in the forest round the fort would support them.

He had not much difficulty in getting them excited, for the fact was, they were more used to hand-to-hand fighting than they were to firearms, and if they were properly led, would go a long way and fight a good fight to the finish. Seeing that they now looked determined, he shouted to
them to follow, and starting his little dug-out down stream, it was soon a race to see which prahu would get there first.

The clamour they made brought the Perak men to the walls again, and in spite of the galling arrows from the trees they made a good stand, but they were demoralised, and when the Raman and Patani men grounded their prahus and jumped ashore, John Smith with his long rapier pointing out to them the way to the gate, it did not require the loud and reiterated cries of "Amok! Amok!" to thoroughly frighten them. It was then only a question of how strong the gate was, and whether the attacking party could be kept at work hewing a way through it, should the defenders make a serious attempt to stop them by firing through the bars.

They made a rush across the two hundred yards of cleared ground between the river and the gate, but not without loss, for if they could do no harm at long range, the clumsy guns could kill well enough at close quarters, and four men bit the dust before they reached the wall. But the attacking party were now excited and their blood was boiling. The Patani war captain also showed his quality by taking a lead and shouting "Amok!" louder than anyone else, as he also hacked away at the gate; but as he did really behave himself something like a soldier, his shouts and bombast did not matter so much. Soon a hole was made big enough for a man to get through, and John Smith, quickly followed by others, got in. It was then a hand-to-hand fight for a while, until the fast-increasing numbers of the assailants drove the Perak men before them across the square enclosure, where they made for another gate, hoping to get to their prahus. But as soon as they got out, the Semang arrows from the trees struck them; and as they made for the river — about twenty only of them that were left — the
other party of Semangs met them, and all except two fell, pierced by arrows or stabbed with bamboo-bladed spears. The two who did manage to push off in a small dugout were also dead men before they reached the middle of the river, and thus the arrows which stuck in their bodies and in the sides of the canoe would tell the tale as they drifted down stream, and when the rumour of it reached the ears of the King of Perak, he would realise that at least some of his soldiers had met with disaster.

It was a very complete victory, and had been won at small cost, for only ten Malays and six Semangs had been killed on the side of the attacking force; but every one of the Perak men went under. The Patani captain boasted not a little of his share in the fight; and the victory, if he was to be believed, was entirely due to his own prowess; but then, as he was never tired of telling people, he was invulnerable, so that the credit of bravery was not so much his due, because it was impossible to win a fight against his leadership.

The Semangs were for throwing the dead bodies in the river, but the Raman Malays insisted on giving them proper burial, for although they might be enemies, at least they were Mohamadans, and it would be disgraceful not to bury them. So dead foeman and gallant friend were laid side by side in the same grave, and the same prayer for their quiet and undisturbed rest was said over each body as it was committed to the earth.

The Patani captain then wanted to move on to the other forts and take them in detail; but John Smith was afraid to risk this with the men he had; so fifty Malays were left in the captured fort, with about as many Semangs to camp in the adjacent forest, and the remainder of the force went back up-stream to the Prince’s palace, to await a more
favourable chance and the arrival of more men from Patani.

The captured weapons — except the guns, which they did not want — were all distributed amongst the Semangs, who were greatly gratified by John Smith's thoughtfulness in seeing that they got possession of them. There was a good store of rice in the fort which came in handy for the new garrison, who were a little nervous about being left, but who did not for a moment question John Smith's orders, for they realised that he knew best what to do, and ultimately went into their new quarters cheerfully enough.
CHAPTER XXXI.

When they got back to the Prince's palace they found that he was energetically engaged in recruiting, and had already got together over a hundred men of his own people. They also found that twelve elephants had arrived from Patani with rice and bundles of salt fish, and in addition, the Queen had sent some gunpowder and bullets, as well as a very affectionate letter to her adopted son, John Smith. She had not, of course, heard anything as yet about the election of the new Prince, nor what was being done about the defence of the country against Perak aggression, but she said that she was shortly sending on two hundred soldiers, but advised that they should not invade Perak territory, unless they thought that it was absolutely necessary.

The ex-Prince of Raman had not as yet started on his journey to Siam, and the Queen was afraid that he was likely to become dangerous, as he had seemed very sick at heart lately. All John Smith's household were flourishing, and she quite approved of his taking little Uteh to wife on his return. This was all very satisfactory news and made things easy, for the arrival of the elephant loads of rice showed the people that the Queen was in earnest about defending her people against Perak, and meant to bear her share of the expense.

They waited three days at the Prince's kampong, sending down twenty-five more men with four elephant loads of rice to the captured fort; and then when the two hundred
soldiers came down the river and had rested for another two days, they organised expeditions against the other two forts. John Smith was so pleased with the conduct of the Semangs that he wished to see how they would fight alone, and therefore persuaded the Patani captain to lead a party of Malays, half Patani and half Raman men, against one fort, whilst he attacked the other with Semangs only.

The old Semang chief had personally examined both the forts, and had found them situated on different streams running into the Perak River. Both streams were navigable for small prahus; but neither of the forts was so easy to attack as the one they had taken, because they were situated in open glades of the forest, with no trees near enough to afford cover. The open land was, however, overgrown with thick coarse grass, which might perhaps afford cover if the assailants crept through it on their bellies; but as this grass was very inflammable, without doubt the garrison had cut down a wide belt of it round the fort for their own protection.

The Patani captain said that he should lead his men straight on and take his stockade by storm, without any hesitation. He did not want any cover, not he! He was not afraid of any Perak soldiers; and he offered to lay a wager of his share of the booty against John Smith's that he took his fort and returned triumphantly to the Prince's palace before the white man and his savages. John Smith was very pleased to observe this spirit, and encouraged it all he could by accepting the wager, and by adding to it, by way of odds in the Captain's favour, his new flint-lock musket, which the gallant Captain had coveted a good deal.

The two forts were about equi-distant from the Prince's place, on streams on either side of the Perak River. They were two days' journey from the palace. The two parties started at the same time. The savage army consisted of
three hundred Semangs with the head chief; and the Patani captain had two hundred and fifty Malays, about half Raman men and the rest Queen’s soldiers, and nearly one hundred of these were armed with guns of different descriptions, while the Semangs, of course, only had bows. The Malay force was also accompanied by six elephants laden with rice, and the wild men were followed by about a hundred women who would forage for them. It was the first time John Smith had trusted himself entirely to the wild men, and the experience was very interesting to him. His forest warriors were entirely devoted to him and did all they could to make him as comfortable as possible, so that he greatly enjoyed his two days’ march and two nights’ camping out. On the third morning the main body of the force halted on the river, some distance below the Perak stockade, and he went forward with the Semang chief and half-a-dozen men to reconnoitre.

Two hours’ scrambling through the forest brought them to the edge of the open ground, at which point they were able to see the stockade on the river bank. The grassy open ground seemed to be about three-quarters of a mile in diameter. It was evidently an old clearing, and had in course of time become overgrown with coarse grass, which the forest growths had not succeeded in killing. Probably from one cause or another, and at different times, the grass had been burnt, and young trees, which had sprung up from seeds blown or carried out of the forest, had thus been periodically destroyed, and the grass had again sprung up from the unskilled roots, thus demonstrating its power to hold the soil even against the mighty trees of the forest.

Often had the white adventurer in these remote jungles pondered and been struck with amazement at the wonderful battle of the plants for ascendancy, and at the strenuous
and apparently almost intelligent struggle with which each species strove against its neighbour for a share of the best soil and a modicum of sunshine. Each tree seemed to strive to attain a greater height than the others, in order to escape from the gloomy shadows and develop its flowers and young shoots in the warmer atmosphere above. In some places creepers and climbing palms would entirely master and, by sheer excessive growth, strangle the biggest monarchs of the forest; in others creeping ferns would do the deed; or perhaps, as in the instance which now met his gaze, it would be a coarse grass, the growth of which would be only augmented by periodical burnings.

Truly it seemed as if the monkeys and birds living in the tree-tops were really better treated than the members of the human race who were condemned to live on the ground, for these denizens of the upper zone moved about in a profuse garden of flowers and fruits; whilst the latter were constrained to be contented with the brown earth and the fallen and decayed timber with which it was strewn, and which was destined to be the meat for a thousand different insects, which thus, instead of the more highly organised and beautiful tenants of the tree tops, were the companions of their walk in life. But there was not time for this sort of moralizing; there was the fort, and the question was how it was to be taken.

The little band of scouts crept round the glade, under cover of the edge of the forest, and examined it from every side. They climbed into tall trees and looked down into the stockade, but they were too far off to attack it from the tree tops, as they had so successfully done with the other one. Once they heard some one chopping wood, and creeping quietly up, they discovered two Malays engaged in trimming a long pole, probably intended for the post of
a hut. They dare not let them escape, so four arrows brought them down, but it seemed almost like murder, for they were not given a chance to defend themselves. But if they had, there would have been an outcry, or perhaps the struggle might have been seen from the fort if they had escaped into the open. The risk of this was too great, so they were killed and left to rot in their tracks.

From the tree-tops they could see that there were prahus on the river; these were probably used to supply the fort with provisions. They also saw that, as had been surmised, the grass had been carefully cut down in a ring of about twenty yards wide all round the fort, to protect it if the lalang — as the coarse grass was called — caught fire. Having seen all they could, they returned to the camp, which was pitched in the forest some five miles away from the fort.

John Smith tried to get a suggestion from the chief as to the best way to attack the fort, but the cautious old man would give no opinion. He seemed to think that it was no business of his: there was the white man, who must certainly know best what to do, and for his part he and his men only awaited orders, and whatever they were told to do, that should be done, and it did not matter how many died in doing it.

After thinking the matter out, their white chief hit upon a plan which he thought would answer, and which the Semang chief — Stia Raja Balantara, as he must now be called — when he understood it, quite fell in with. The preparations to carry out the project would take at least two days, but neither of them thought that the wager with the Patani captain would be lost because of the delay.

They first retired another five miles away into the forest, so as to be out of reach of any chance interruption by men
who might stray from the stockade, or go into the forest for game or other matters.

They then sent out a party of fifty men to tap some oil-bearing trees which were known to them. This wood oil was a regular article of commerce, and one of the natural productions of the forest which the wild men collected for the Malay chiefs by way of tribute. It was obtained by cutting a deep notch in the tree, with a cup-like depression at the base. This cup, after an interval of a day or two, became filled with a valuable oil, which exuded from the wound, and it was then collected by the Semangs in bamboo receptacles.

Another party was sent back to an abandoned clearing — once a Perak Malay kampong — on the river, to fetch a quantity of raw cotton from some trees which were now full of ripened pods. Others were engaged in searching for a supply of tinder, and in providing little bamboo cases to carry it in alight. These also selected suitable bits of dry wood and bamboo for producing fire by friction.

All these preparations took some time, and it was three whole days before they were ready to advance. By that time each man was supplied with tinder in a small bamboo case, perforated so as to create a draught through it and keep the fuel smouldering, and two suitable bits of hard wood or bamboo to produce fire by friction. In addition he had fixed balls of raw cotton, soaked in inflammable oil, on to two of his arrows just below the heads.

Everything was now ready for a start, and the men were given their final instructions. First they marched up to within a mile of the clearing in a body, and then separating into two parties, one went to the right and the other to the left. That to the right was led by John Smith, and the other by Stia Raja; and thus they travelled round the clearing,
dropping a man at intervals of about every fifty yards, until they arrived at the river bank with about twenty men left of each party. It was now just getting dusk, and the men were warned by a call of the argus pheasant, repeated from man to man, to close up to the edge of the clearing; and as they closed up, the intervals between them became naturally less, so that by the time they were at the edge of the timber they were within easy speaking distance.

It was now necessary to wait awhile, as it was not thought advisable to attack until after mid-night, when the Perak men would be fast asleep and taken at greater disadvantage. So the word was passed round for all to stop where they were and eat their evening meal of prepared tapioca root. It was weary waiting for the white man, who was not so innured to sitting still and being eaten by mosquitoes and sand flies, as were his comrades, the wild men; but at last he heard the welcome signal from Stia Raja, who had agreed to decide on the proper moment for the advance.

Two quick calls of the argus pheasant, and then after a short interval a third. At this signal each man was to commence the not very easy task of obtaining a spark from his fire sticks and to ignite his tinder; the tinderbox was then to be stuck in the back of his belt, his naked back being protected from possible burns by a sheet of green bark. As soon as his tinder was well alight, each warrior commenced to creep forward on his belly through the long grass, the small points of light, even if they were seen from the fort, would be taken for fireflies, which were everywhere dancing about in the air, myriads of them, simultaneously flashing and shutting off their lamps as if by an automatic process or by word of command. It took them more than an hour to crawl through the grass up to the edge of the belt which had been cut down, and it was
anxious work for the last two hundred yards; in fact John Smith was tormented all the time for fear a spark should set light to the grass as his men moved through it: but at last they all arrived, and every man as he got to his position gave the call of the goat-sucker, “tip-ta-bau,” — the note which each evening told the good Mohamadan that it was time for prayers. The sentries in the stockade, if they heard the calls, must have thought that the forest was full of the feathered muezzins, and that they had by some strange chance agreed to wake people to prayers at an unprecedented hour.

But the poor sentries had little time to speculate, for suddenly the harsh scream of the great hawk was heard, an unusual and disturbing note at that hour, and the harbinger of evil to come. Immediately following this call, the fort was encircled with a ring of points of fire, which glowed and increased in power and strength for a few short minutes, then hurtled through the air and alighted on the palm-leaf thatch and stuck into the bark walls and dry palisades.

There was no need for the sentries to awake their sleeping comrades, for the glare of over two hundred fire balls, burning all over the stockade, and setting fire to the dry thatch and palisades effectually aroused the sleepers, who rushed out of the huts into the open yard of the fort in a panic of consternation, which was changed to downright shuddering horror and fright when they were assailed by a second flight of fiery arrows. These seemed to fall straight down from the sky, and many a man was hit and rushed screaming about the enclosure with a fiery dart sticking into his shoulders; for the wily old Semang chief had anticipated what would occur, and had ordered that the second flight of arrows, to be fired after an interval of about five
minutes, should be shot up into the air, so that they fell down straight into the stockade.

By this time the huts in the centre of the enclosure, as well as the palisade fence, were beginning to burn in many places, and the garrison realised that, if they wished to escape being scorched to death between the two fires, they must get away, and that quickly. They therefore made a rush for the gate nearest the river, and made for the prahus; but they were there exposed to a cross fire from the Semangs who were stationed on the river bank, and who, whilst they were invisible to the Malays, could plainly see their enemies by reason of the fire light.

John Smith and Stia Raja shouted to their men to concentrate on the bank, and every minute more and more of them came running up, until there were fifty or sixty in each group. They then kept sending arrows into the mob of fugitives, who were frantically scrambling into the prahus and pushing off into midstream.

Very few of them escaped down the river to tell the tale of another disaster to the Perak cause, and in less than an hour the fort with its barracks and high palisade fence had burnt out, and only a few smouldering brands remained to show where it stood. The little Semang army gradually gathered and bivouacked on the bank of the river, every dark little soldier, as well as the white chief, stretching himself on the bare ground to snatch two or three hours' sleep before daylight.

It was a horrid sight that the morning sun disclosed, for the ground was strewn with dead bodies. Those men who had been only wounded had crawled down to the river for water to allay the torturing thirst induced by the poisoned arrows, and had died there; perhaps self-drowned to escape the agony, for several were found with their faces buried
in the water at the edge of the stream, as if they had deliberately kept their heads under water until they were suffocated. There was no chance of burying them, so most of them were cast into the river, but some were so badly burnt that it seemed better to collect brands and other timber from the stockade and make a pile on which to throw them and so finish the burning. Nearly one hundred bodies were counted, so not many could have escaped down the river.

Many weapons were collected, and with these as trophies they returned to the Prince's palace and heard that the other stockade had not yet been taken.

But besides that, John Smith heard most distressing news from Patani, brought over by the elephants which had just arrived with a consignment of rice.

The Queen's letter told him that the ex-Prince had once more run a-muck, and this time had succeeded in getting himself killed, but not before he had done much slaughter. One of the elephant-drivers who had witnessed the affray told the tale.

He said that Si Andak had been staying with 'Che Long, who was expecting her confinement; when, in the evening, just as it was getting dusk, the ex-Prince started up suddenly, and drawing his weapons, stabbed first his wife and then Si Andak and an old lady who was staying in the house; after which he rushed out into the town and commenced to run through the main street, striking at everybody he met, and killing five more people, besides wounding several others, before he himself was overpowered and killed.

The queen urged John Smith to return as soon as possible, as she now wished him to go to Siam, because she thought it better to get her Overlord on her side. She well knew that she had no business in the Perak watershed, and
could not with any show of reason claim the territory for which she was fighting, although it had been colonized by her own people, who had gradually moved further and further down the Perak River. But right or wrong, the State was now committed to the war and was bound to proceed. So far as could be ascertained, Perak was not sending up any more men and it only remained, therefore, to turn out the garrison of the other fort, and after that to arrange for the safe-guarding of the advanced frontier thus won by force of arms.

The Patani war captain did not seem in any very particular hurry to take his fort by direct assault. He had sent back for more ammunition, but this was refused him; and John Smith sent word that if he did not at once leave off shooting, and attack the stockade in earnest, he would himself come to help.

This threat stirred up the valour of the brave captain, and he led an attack personally, but it never reached the walls of the stockade. Up to that time only five men had been killed on the Patani side, and probably none in the fort, but as they charged across the open and got within point-blank range of the enemy's guns, many of the storming party got bowled over; and the war captain seeing this, ordered his men to retire. He was brave enough to face death himself, but he could not bear to see his men killed.

This was the news that was brought back, with a message from the great warrior to the effect that he intended waiting until the Perak men had exhausted all their ammunition before he delivered another attack. This evidently meant a prolonged siege; so John Smith chose fifty of the Patani men from the force at the Prince's place, and taking one hundred Semangs with Stia Raja went to his assistance, and pretending to place himself and his men under the
command of the Patani captain, he persuaded him to attack once more. This second attack soon decided the fate of the fort, which was rushed at once and the Perak men driven out, when those who were not killed, and they were only a small moiety, escaped down-stream in their prahu.

Having thus accomplished what he went down to Raman to do, John Smith returned to Patani, were he was received with great honour; and after an interval, he proceeded to Siam as the special envoy of the Queen.

When he returned from that journey he found letters awaiting him from James Neccy, who had got back to Johor. James Neccy wrote that he was about to send a ship up to Patani to fetch him and his belongings, as he wanted him to join in the attack on Malacca which was soon to start, and an honorable post in this expedition awaited his friend and late supercargo.

Further journals of the English adventurer give a very graphic and interesting description of this expedition, which was not very successful, owing to the fact that at the last moment the King of Johor did not fulfil his engagements. The expedition started from Johor in 1606, and after making an unsuccessful demonstration before the city of Malacca, returned, and the ships then dispersed. John Smith’s share consisted of organising an attack from the land side. He had a very interesting and adventurous time travelling up the Moar River amongst the Menangkabau subjects of the King of Johor, who were colonizing the country behind Malacca and about Mount Ophir.

He lived for many years after in Malay countries, going back to Europe and seeing his mother in England every few years. He was in England at the time of her death, but would not come forward until her funeral took place, because he would not cause her the pain of acknowledging
him, which he knew would have greatly distressed her.

He was an English pioneer, although he sailed and fought chiefly under the Dutch flag, his birth and parentage making it difficult for him to assert himself under the sanction and protection of his own country.

THE END.
### ERRATA.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pag.</th>
<th>read:</th>
<th>4 to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>which</td>
<td>wich</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>has</td>
<td>hat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>when</td>
<td>wen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>had</td>
<td>hat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>through</td>
<td>omit: crew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>as</td>
<td>ast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>and turning to the stakes</td>
<td>omit:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>if</td>
<td>is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>porridge</td>
<td>poorridge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>the</td>
<td>te</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>to</td>
<td>tho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>to</td>
<td>so</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>which</td>
<td>wich</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>were</td>
<td>was</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>she lifted</td>
<td>she lifted her face</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69</td>
<td>through</td>
<td>trough</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74</td>
<td>reloaded</td>
<td>reloaden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>88</td>
<td>through</td>
<td>trough</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>88</td>
<td>they got no nearer</td>
<td>they got nearer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89</td>
<td>plucked up heart to</td>
<td>plucked up heart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>thigh</td>
<td>right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>92</td>
<td>which</td>
<td>wich</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>93</td>
<td>given to march</td>
<td>given march</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Pag. 98 hat

99 there

99 conduct

100 thousand hundred

121 latter

128 lett

138 is

151 trew

161 op

172 successfull

178 easily

188 crescent

189 torn

198 Afrika

200 o man

201 whome

206 were

215 wither

215 divolved

221 asleep

234 id

235 had prepared then

241 te stream

244 rived

244 schrill

244 out

245 moon

247 does

247 away far

252 and were be supposed

252 to chief

257 and hinting

258 Duch

259 it is

259 realised

260 opinion

264 sences

264 therefore •

read: had

the

conduct

thousand

later

let

it

threw

up

successful

easily

the Crescent

tore

Africa

a man

whom

was

whither

devolved

sleeps

it

had prepared

the river

lived

shrikl

moon-lit

hinds

far away

and were supposed

to the chief

hinting

Dutch

is it

he realised

opinion

senses

therefor
Pag. 267 as the children read: the children

"269 hardened  " hardened
"269 to each clan  " each clan
"269 te  " the
"273 haran  " haram
"278 fear  " fear
"279 wen  " when
"284 omit: so that they could only move about by lifting both feet
"288  " found
"289  " return to
"295 ha'jis  read: hajis
"303 to present  " to the present